




As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➤ **Safety Labels** P. 84


A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 29

For Safe Driving P. 30 Seat Belts P. 34 Airbags P. 45
Safety Labels P. 84

Instrument Panel P. 85

Indicators P. 86 Gauges and Displays P. 125

Controls P. 149

Clock P. 150 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 151
Sunroof* P. 171
Adjusting the Seats P. 197

Features P. 227

Audio System P. 228 Audio System Basic Operation P. 235
Customized Features P. 290

Driving P. 325

Before Driving P. 326 Towing a Trailer P. 330 When Driving P. 331
Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 427 Multi-View Camera System* P. 429
Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions P. 471

Maintenance P. 473

Before Performing Maintenance P. 474 Oil Monitor System P. 477
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 506
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 520

Handling the Unexpected P. 531

Tools P. 532 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 533
Overheating P. 549 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 551
When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 563

Information P. 565

Specifications P. 566 Identification Numbers P. 568

Contents

Pop-up Hood System* P. 55 Child Safety P. 58 Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 83

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 29

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 164 Security System P. 166 Opening and Closing the Windows P. 168
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 173 Adjusting the Mirrors P. 194
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 207 Climate Control System P. 223

Instrument Panel P. 85

Controls P. 149

Audio Error Messages P. 279 General Information on the Audio System P. 281
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System P. 309

Features P. 227

Honda Sensing* P. 358 Braking P. 406 Parking Your Vehicle P. 415
Honda Smart Parking Assist System* P. 439 Refueling P. 467
Turbo Engine Vehicle P. 472

Driving P. 325

Maintenance Schedule P. 482 Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 486 Replacing Light Bulbs P. 497
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 509 Battery P. 516 Remote Transmitter Care P. 519
Cleaning P. 522 Accessories and Modifications P. 528

Maintenance P. 473

Handling the Unexpected P. 531

Engine Does Not Start P. 541 Jump Starting P. 544 Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 547
Fuses P. 557 Emergency Towing P. 562
When You Cannot Open the Boot P. 564

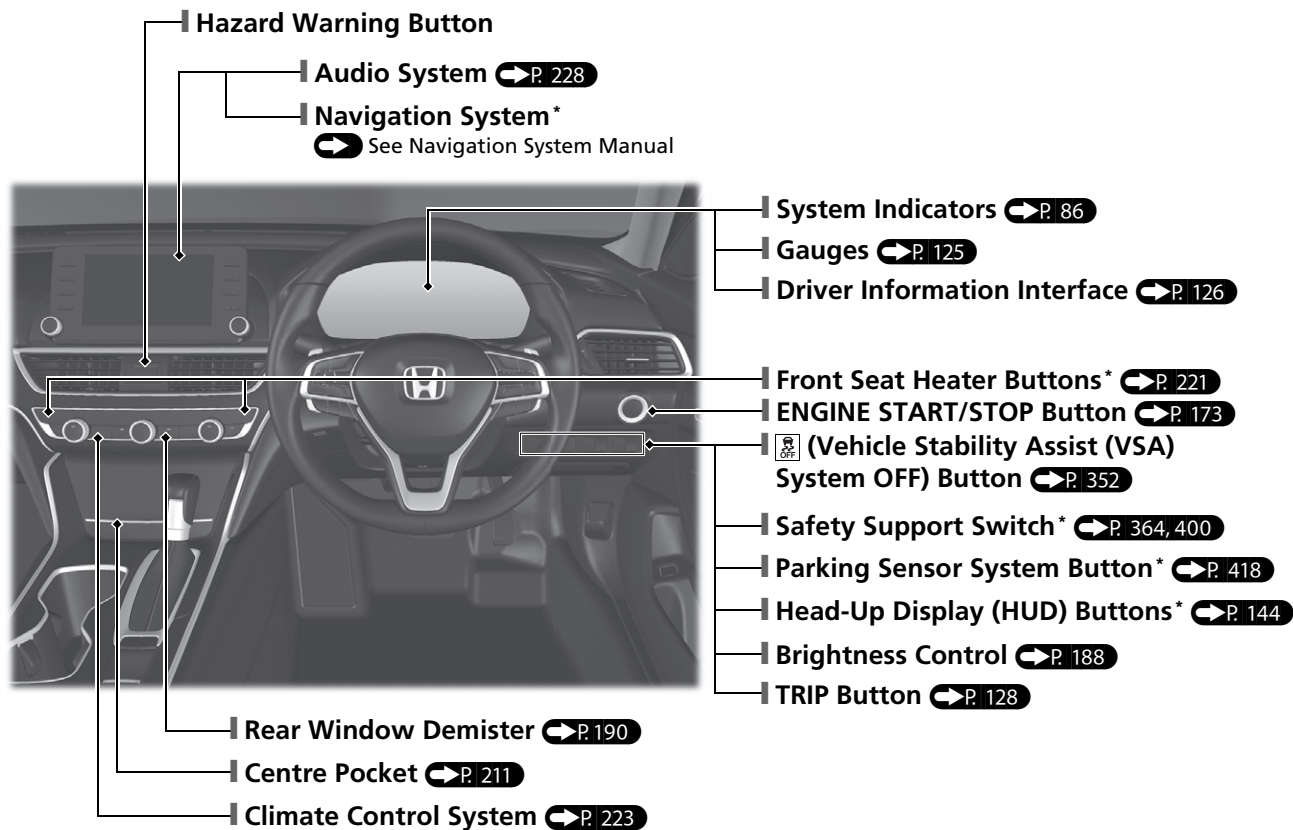
Information P. 565

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 569

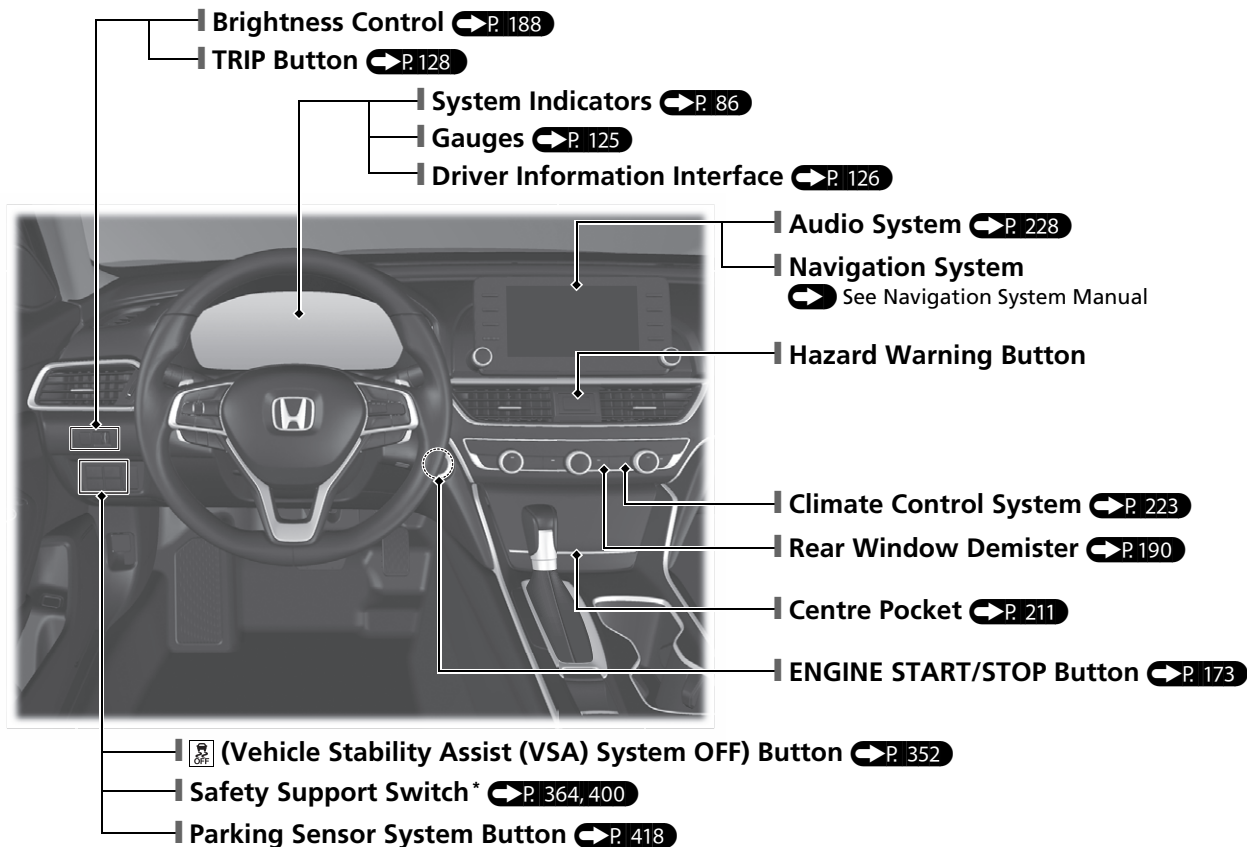
Index P. 570

Visual Index

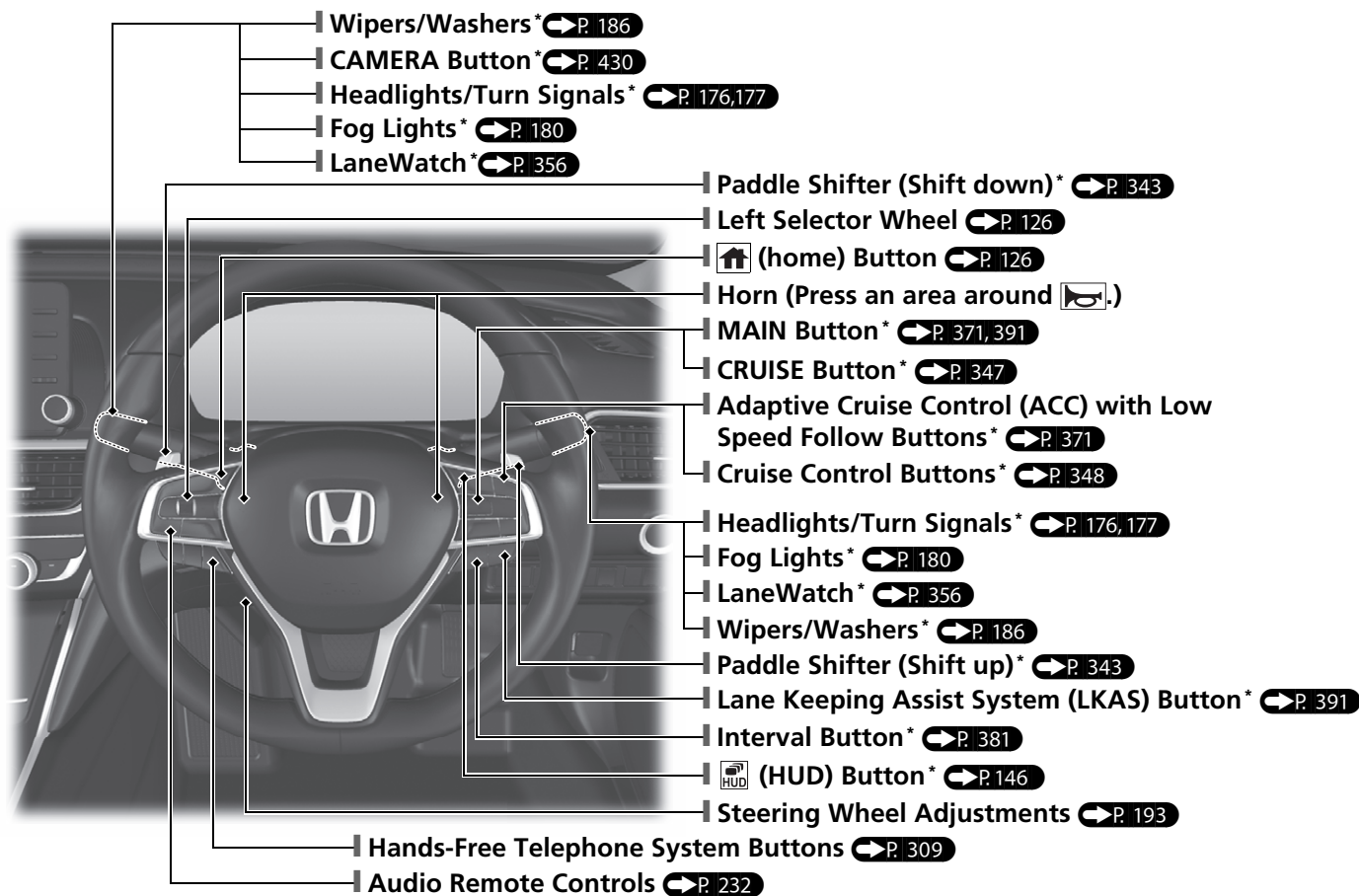
Right-hand drive models



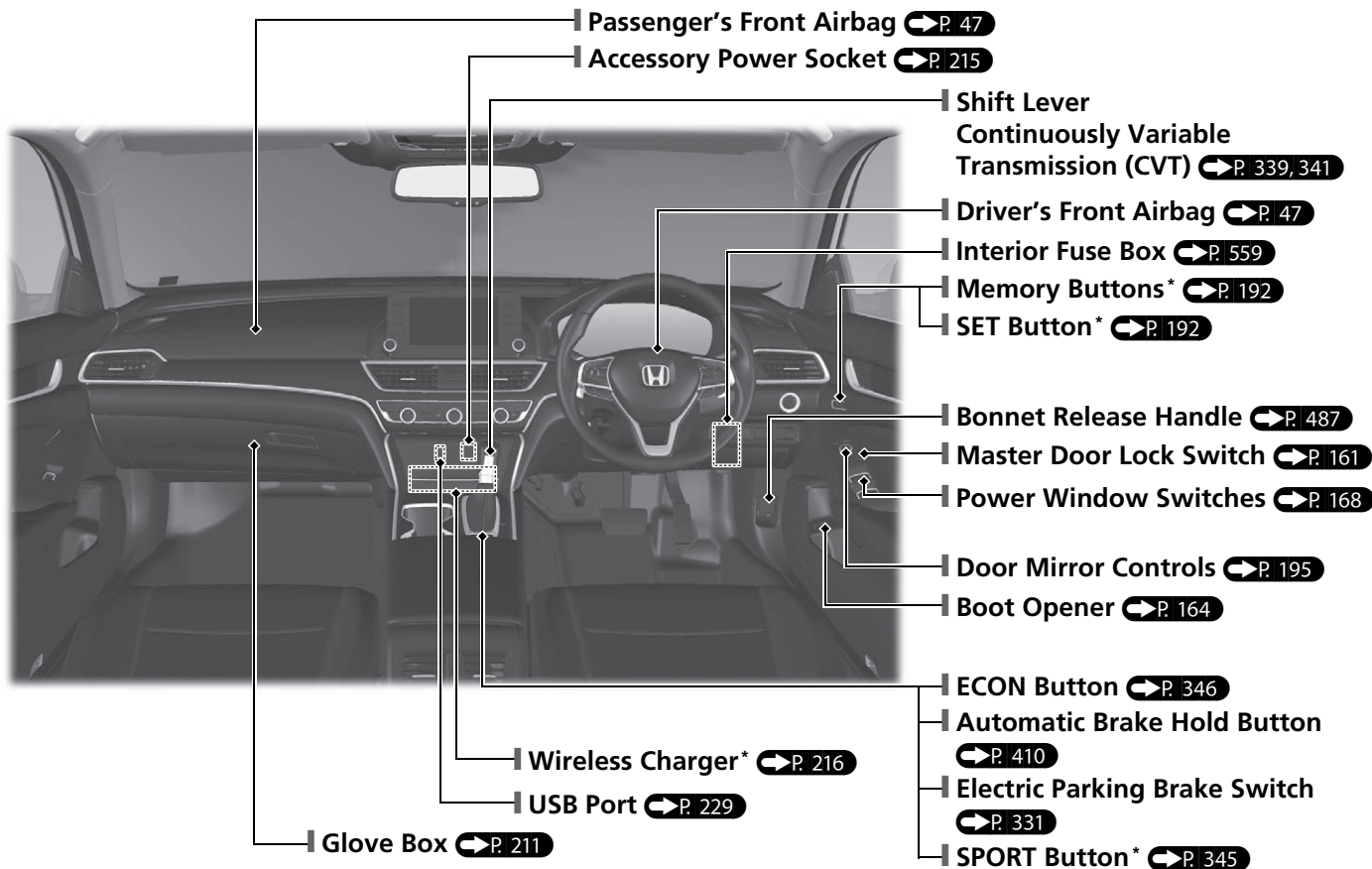
Left-hand drive models



Visual Index



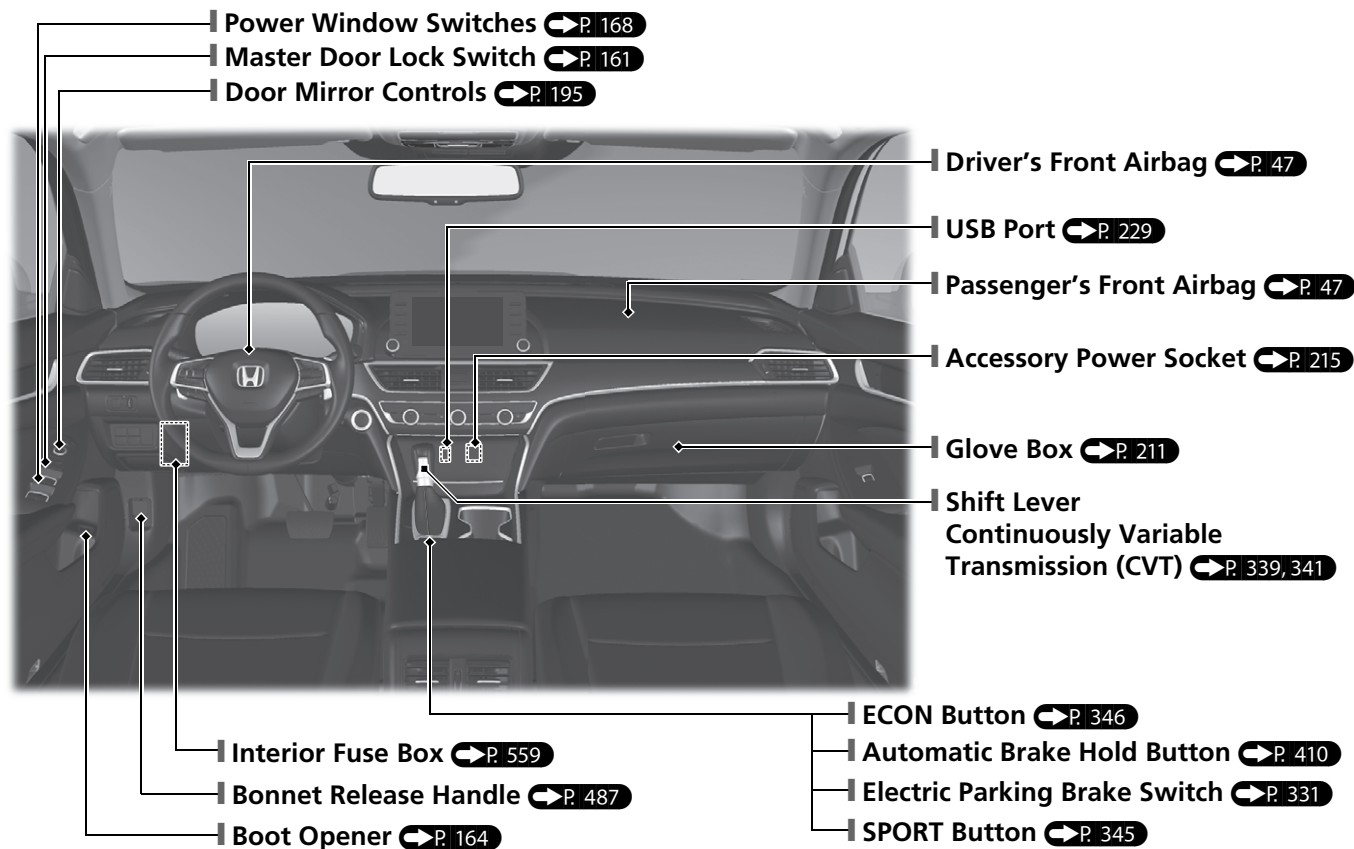
Right-hand drive models

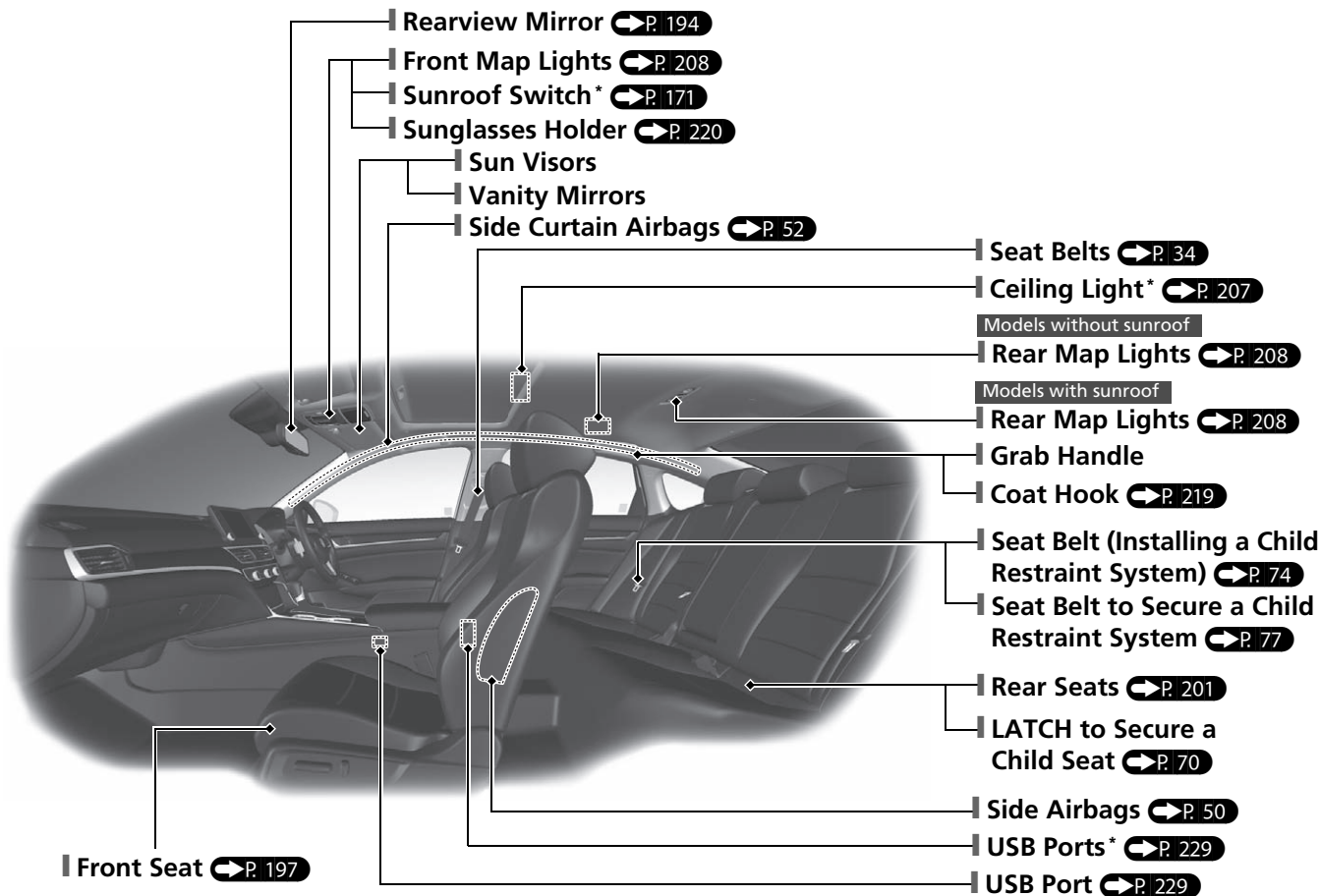


* Not available on all models

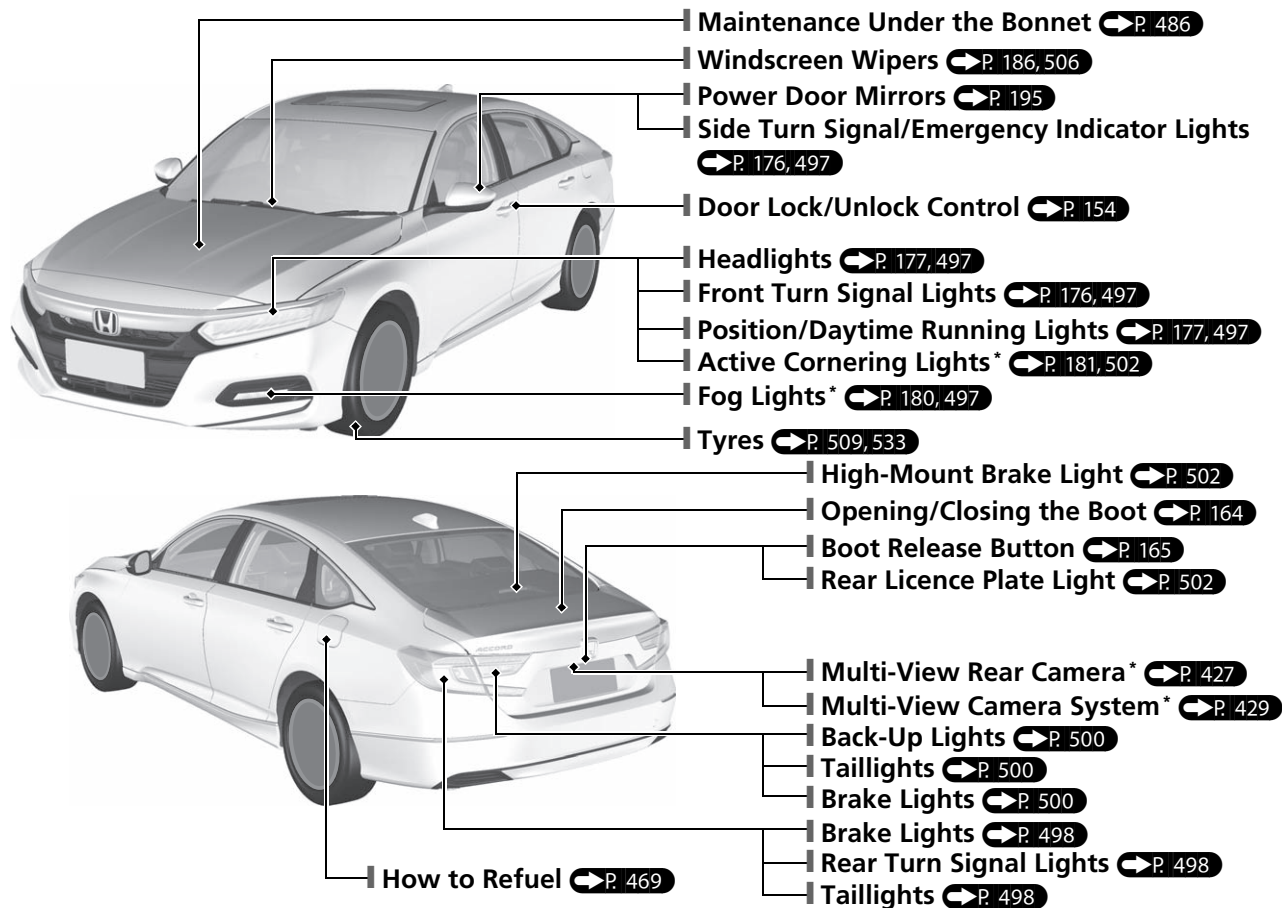
Visual Index

Left-hand drive models





Visual Index

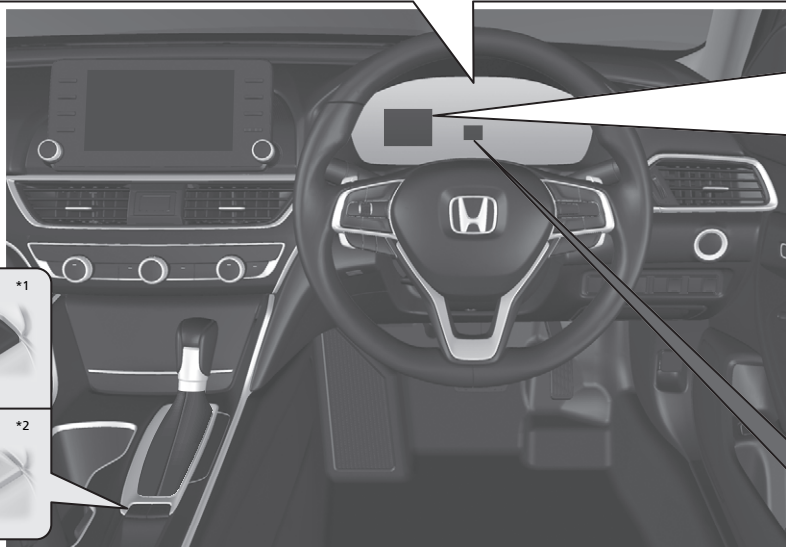


Eco Assist System

Ambient Meter

Ambient Meter

- With SPORT mode* off, the colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.

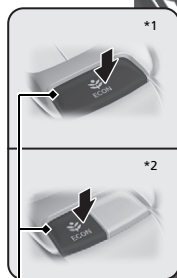


The message is displayed for a few seconds when the ECON button is pressed.



ECON Mode Indicator

Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.



ECON Button

Helps to maximise fuel economy.

*1: Models without SPORT mode

*2: Models with SPORT mode

* Not available on all models

Safe Driving ➡ P. 29

Before Driving Checklist ➡ P. 30

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts ➡ P. 34

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P. 83

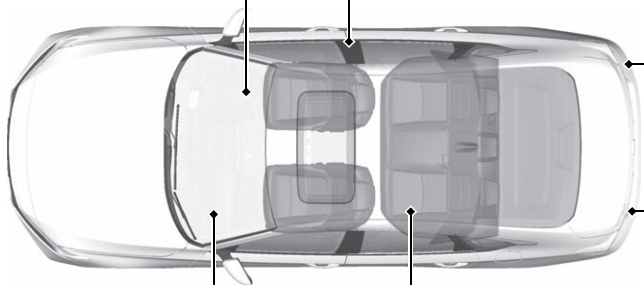
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety ➡ P. 58

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

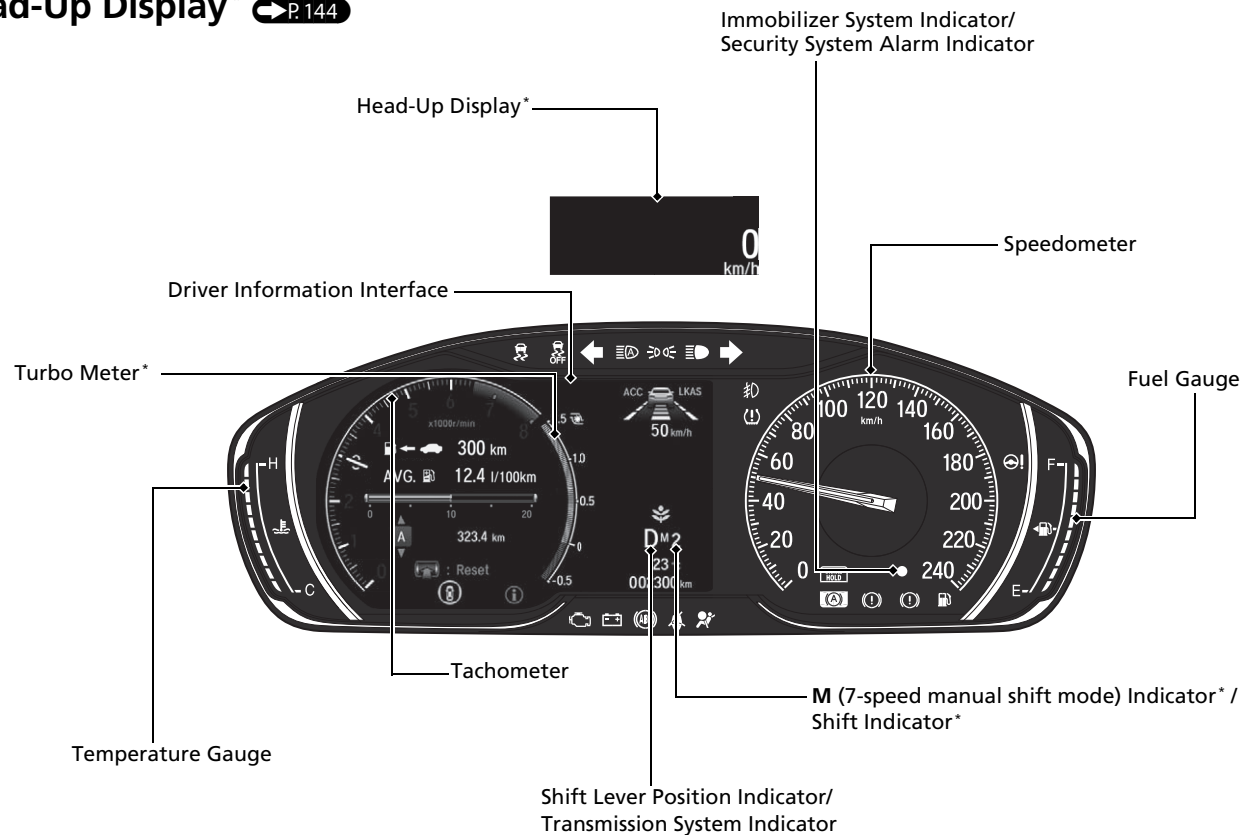
Airbags ➡ P. 45

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.



Instrument Panel ➡ P.85

Indicators ➡ P.86 / Driver Information Interface ➡ P.126 / Gauges ➡ P.125 /
Head-Up Display* ➡ P.144

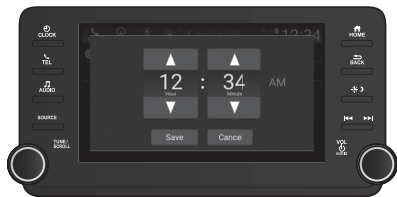


* Not available on all models

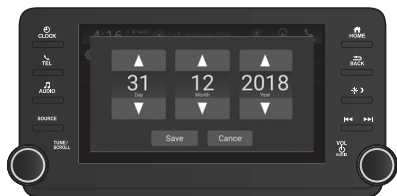
Controls P.149


Clock P.150



To adjust time



To adjust date



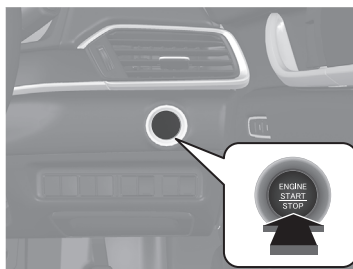
- 1** Press the , then select **Settings**.
- 2** Select **System**, then **Day & Time**.
- 3** Select **Set Date & Time**.
- 4** Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

- 5** Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
- 6** Adjust the dates, hours and minutes by selecting /.
- 7** Select **Save** to set the date or time.

The clock is automatically updated through the GPS, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

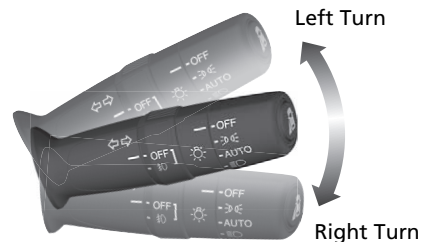
ENGINE START/STOP Button P.173

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.

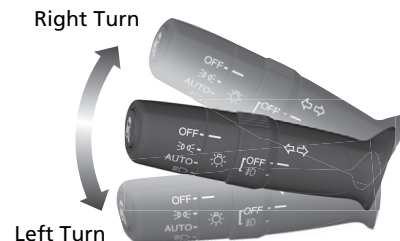


Turn Signals P.176

Right-hand drive models

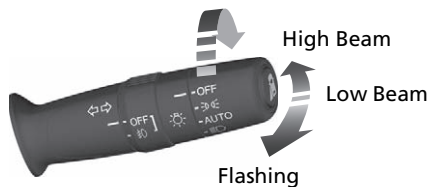


Left-hand drive models



Lights ➡ P.177

Light Control Switches



Wipers and Washers

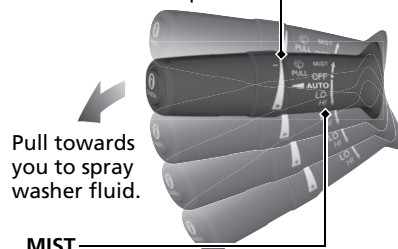
➡ P.186

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring

☐ : Low Sensitivity*¹
☐ : Lower speed, fewer sweeps*²

☐ : High Sensitivity*¹
☐ : Higher speed, more sweeps*²



MIST
OFF

AUTO*¹: Wiper speed varies automatically

INT*²: Low speed with intermittent

LO: Low speed wipe

HI: High speed wipe

*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

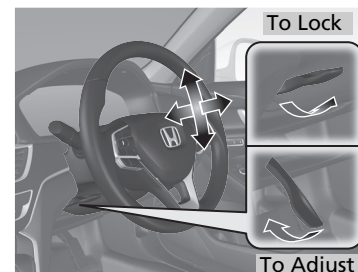
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel ➡ P.193

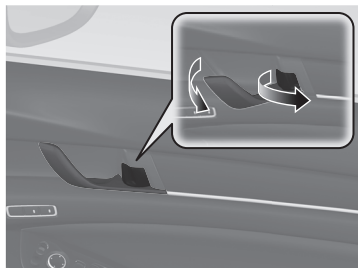
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside

➡ P.160

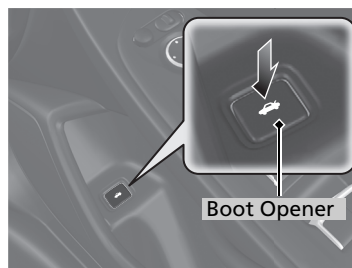
- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



- Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

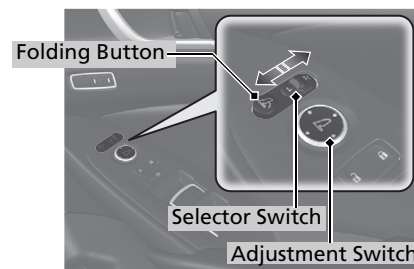
Boot ➡ P.164

- Press the boot opener on the driver's door to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the remote to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the boot lid to unlock and open the boot.



Power Door Mirrors ➡ P.195

- With the power mode is in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

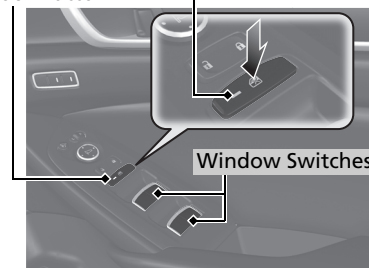


Power Windows ➡ P.168



- With the power mode is ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position (indicator off), each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

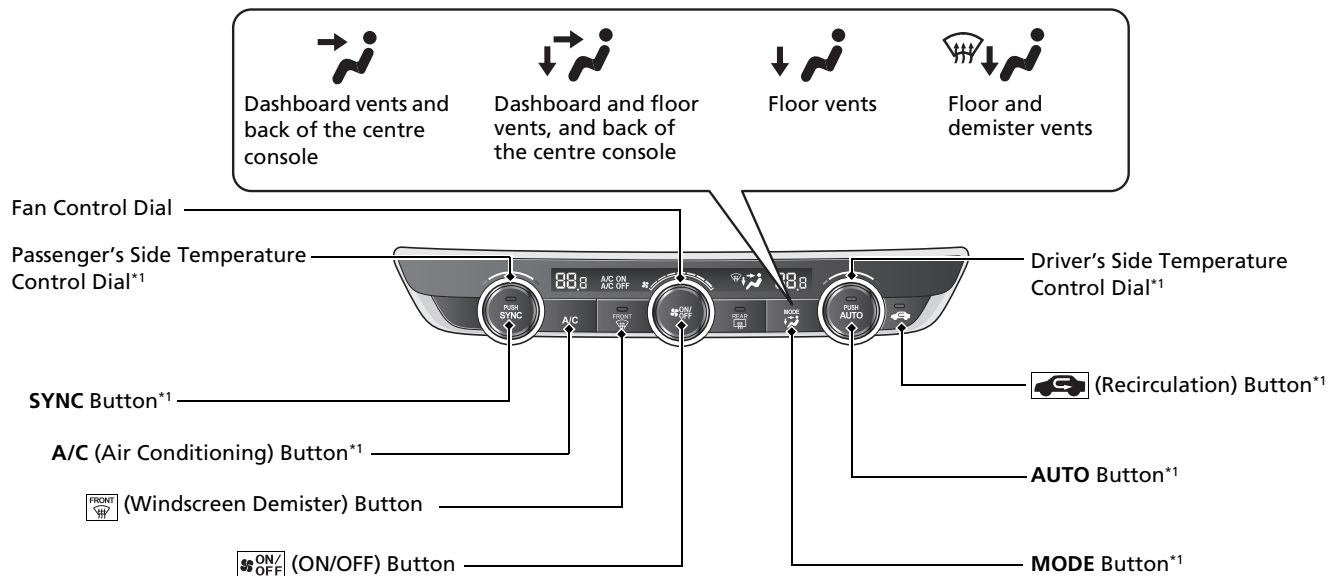
Power Window
Lock Button

Indicator



Climate Control System P.223

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

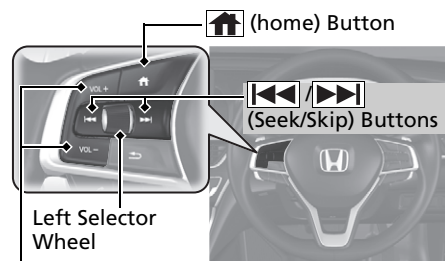


*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.


Features

Audio Remote Controls

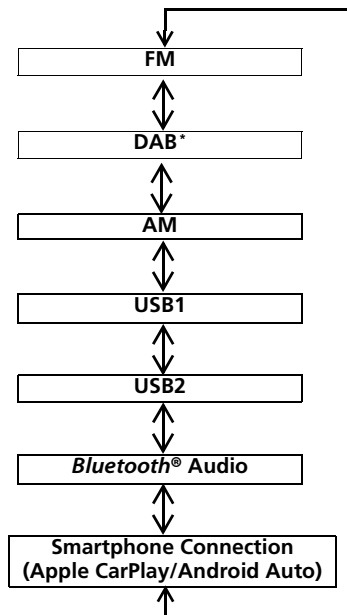
 P. 232







VOL+/**VOL-** (Volume) Buttons

- **VOL+**/**VOL-** (Volume) Buttons
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel
When selecting the audio mode
Press the  (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:



-  (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Radio: Press  to change the preset station.
iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:
Press  to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
USB device:
Press and hold  to change a folder.

Audio System ➡ P. 235

For navigation system operation ➡ See the Navigation System Manual

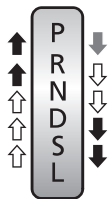


Driving

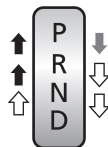
Continuously Variable Transmission



- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- **Shifting**



Models without paddle shifters

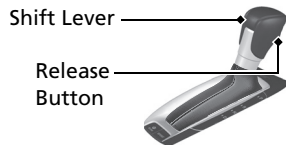


Models with paddle shifters

Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.



P Park
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive

- Used for normal driving.
- On models with paddle shifters, 7-speed mode can be used temporarily.
- On models with paddle shifters, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used when driving in SPORT mode.

S Drive (S)*

- Used for better acceleration.
- Used to increase engine braking.
- Used when going up or down hills.

L Low*

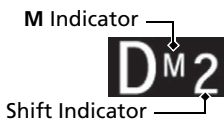
- Used to further increase engine braking.
- Used when going up or down hills.


7-Speed Manual Shift Mode*

- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.


When the shift lever is in **D** with SPORT mode

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.



Shift Down 

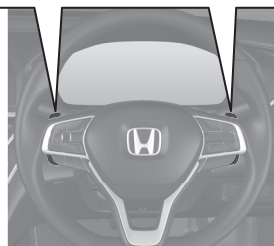


Shift Up 



When the shift lever is in **D**

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



VSA On and Off P. 352

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control* P. 347

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **SET/-** button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

CMBS On and Off* P. 364

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support switch.

Deflation Warning System* P. 354

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Refueling ➔ P. 467

Fuel recommendation: Thai models

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol),
research octane number 91 or higher**

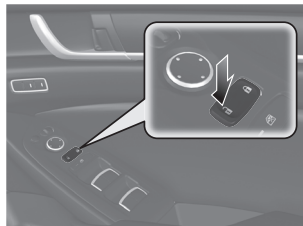
Except Thai models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 56 L

- 1 Unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch.

➤ Using the Master Door Lock Switch ➔ P. 161



- 2 Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.

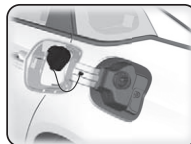


- 3 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.



- 4 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

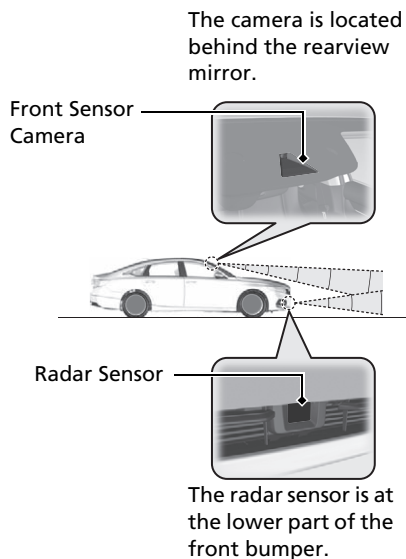
- 5 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda Sensing*

➡ P. 358

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located at the lower part of the front bumper and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

➡ P. 361

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

➡ P. 370

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

➡ P. 386

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Road Departure Mitigation System

➡ P. 397

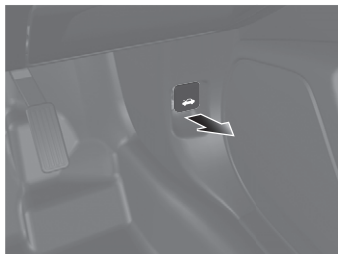
Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Maintenance ➡ P. 473

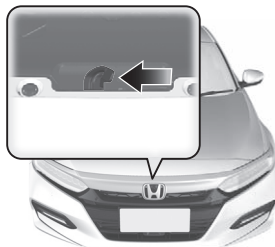
Under the Bonnet ➡ P. 486

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



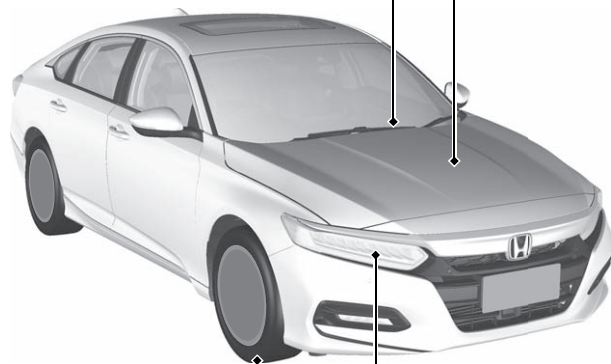
- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades ➡ P. 506

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



Tyres ➡ P. 509

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights ➡ P. 497

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➡ P.531

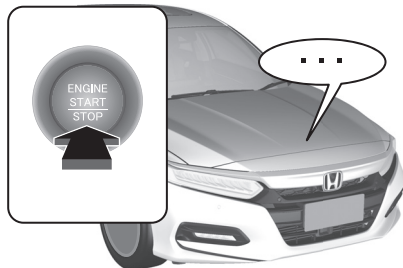
Flat Tyre ➡ P.533

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the compact spare tyre in the boot.



Engine Won't Start ➡ P.541

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating ➡ P.549

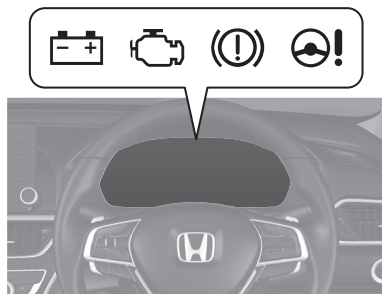
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On/Blink

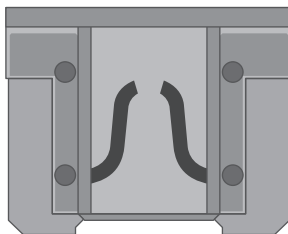
➡ P.551

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse ➡ P.557

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing ➡ P.562

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**. Why?

A

- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**. Why?

A The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



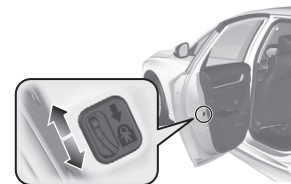
Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➤ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➔ P.412

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

🔧 Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock) ➡ P.156

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q **Models with deflation warning system**
I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to reinitialise the system.

🔧 Deflation Warning System* ➡ P.354

Q Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

A

- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

Q Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q **Indonesian models**
Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher is recommended.
Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 88 or lower on this vehicle?

A Unleaded petrol with a research octane number of 91 or higher is recommended.
Use of a lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

Q **Pakistani models**
Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 87 or higher on this vehicle?

A Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	30
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	32
Safety Checklist	33

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	34
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	39
Seat Belt Inspection.....	43
Anchorage Points.....	44

Airbags

Airbag System Components	45
Types of Airbags	47

Front Airbags (SRS)	47
Side Airbags.....	50
Side Curtain Airbags	52
Airbag System Indicators.....	53
Airbag Care	54

Pop-up Hood System*

About the Pop-up Hood System.....	55
Pop-up Hood System Care.....	57

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	58
Safety of Infants and Small Children	62
Safety of Larger Children	80

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	83
--------------------------	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	84
-----------------------	----

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

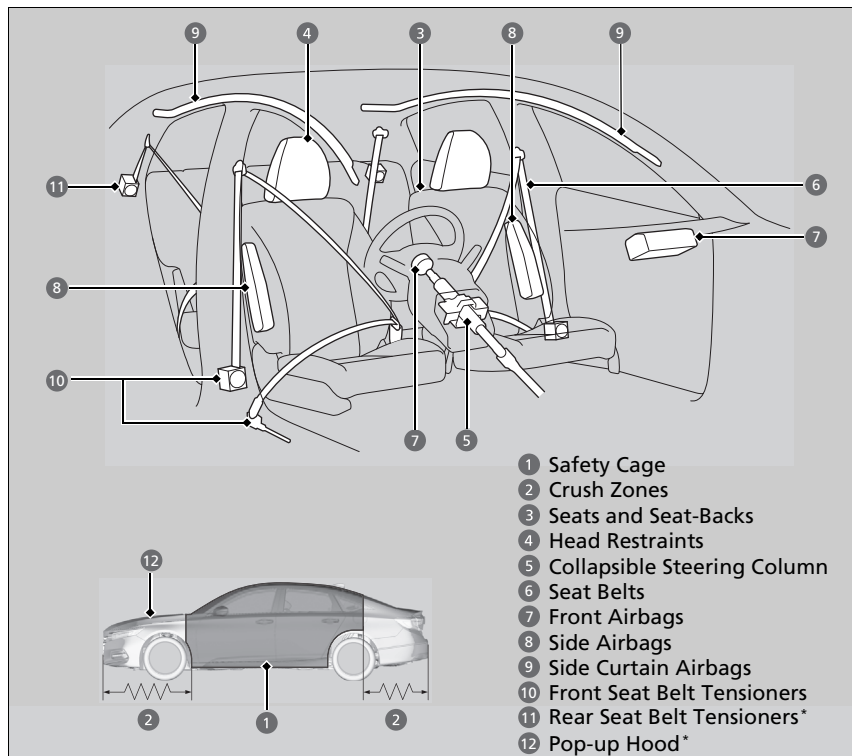
Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death.

Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

►► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

✦ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 197

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

✦ **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 203

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

✦ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 39

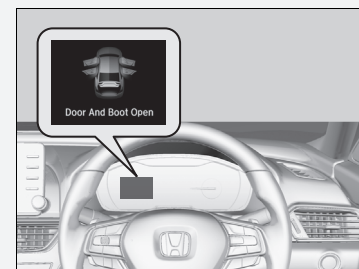
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

✦ **Child Safety** P. 58

✦ Safety Checklist

If the door and/or boot open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the message disappears.

✦ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 105



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

» About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The rear outer and centre seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 74

Models without lockable retractor seat belts

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 74

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

►► About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

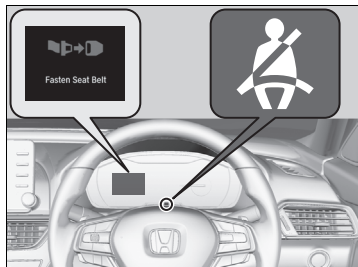
Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper* will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

▶▶ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

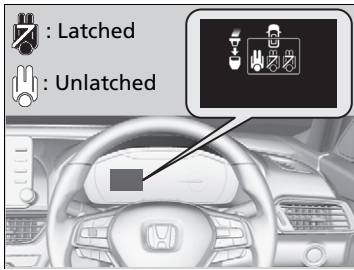
If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ Rear seats*

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened or closed.
- Any of the rear passengers latches or unlatches their seat belt.

The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

To see the display:

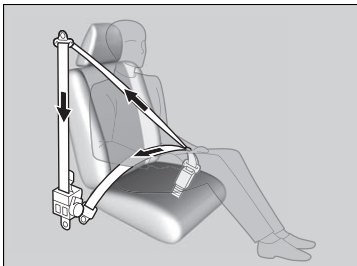
- ▶ **Switching the Display** P. 126

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats* are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts* during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



►► Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

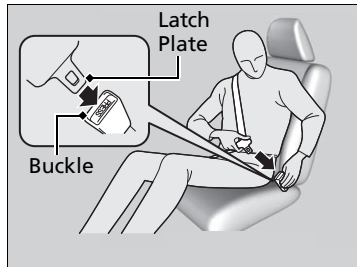
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 197



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

✎ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in. Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

✎ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 34

✎ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 43



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

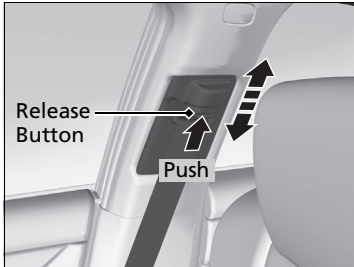
To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pushing the release button.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

▣ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

►► Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

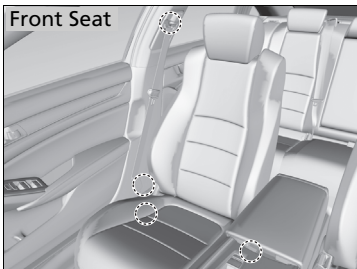
WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

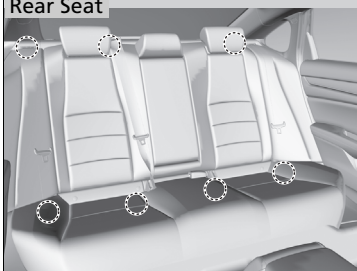
Anchorage Points

Front Seat



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seats have a lap/shoulder belt.

Rear Seat



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

* Not available on all models

■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

►► Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver’s and front passenger’s seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver’s and front passenger’s seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant’s primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

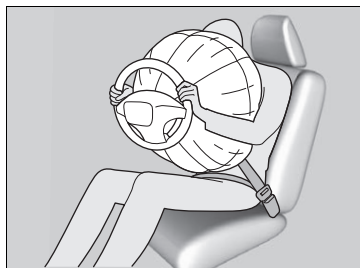
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help to reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

✎ How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

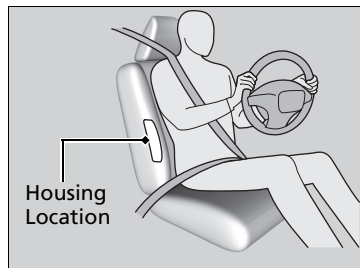
■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

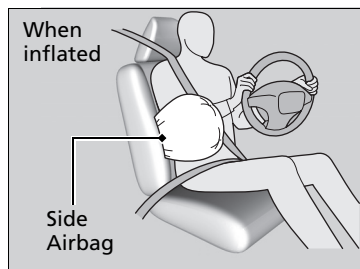
Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

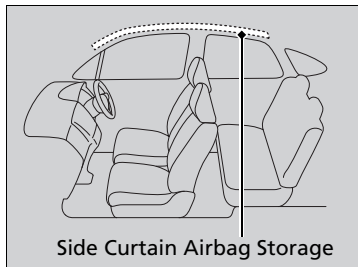
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

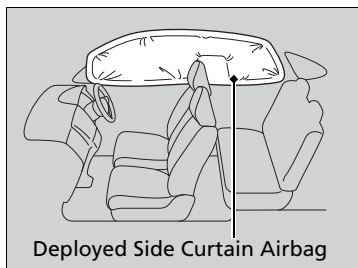
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

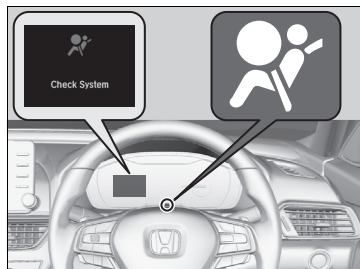
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

▶▶ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

► Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

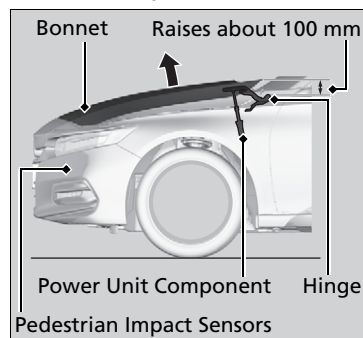
About the Pop-up Hood System

The pop-up hood system is designed to help to reduce the possible head injuries of a pedestrian if they experience a frontal impact with your vehicle.

■ The system activates when

Your vehicle strikes a pedestrian or other objects at moderate or higher speed.

■ How the system works



When the pedestrian impact sensors detect a certain amount of impact, the pop-up hood system is activated and the rear of the bonnet will raise.

The raised bonnet can help to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

⌘ About the Pop-up Hood System

⚠ WARNING

After the pop-up hood is activated, the power unit components become extremely hot and can cause burns. Do not touch the power unit components until they have cooled.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to open the bonnet after the pop-up hood system has been activated. After the system activation, make sure the raised bonnet does not interfere with visibility, and then drive slowly and carefully.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, it may not work properly. Make sure the bonnet is fully closed before driving.

The following conditions may also activate the system.

- A severe impact on the underside of your vehicle.
- Driving over speed bumps at high speed, or over a large pothole.
- When the objects impact the pedestrian impact sensors.

The system may not activate if your vehicle is:

- Impacted from the rear or side.
- Tipped over or rolled over.
- A pedestrian is struck at an angle.

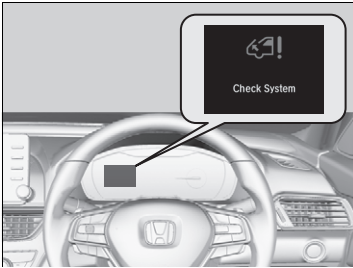
Other factors, such as where, at which angle, or at what vehicle speed the impact has occurred, may prevent the pop-up hood system from activating.

►► About the Pop-up Hood System

For the pop-up hood system to work properly:

- Always use the same size tyres as the original. The system may not read your vehicle speed correctly with the different size tyres.
- Never apply force to the system's power unit. It can be damaged if you slam the bonnet shut.
- Do not impact the pedestrian impact sensors in the front bumper.

■ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood



■ **When the power mode is set to ON**
A system warning message appears on the driver information interface if there is a potential problem with the pop-up hood system.

Pop-up Hood System Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any pop-up hood system components yourself. However, if the pop-up hood system has ever activated, you need to have the control unit, and other related parts replaced by a dealer.

⌘ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the pop-up hood message can result in a malfunction of the pop-up hood. This can result in serious injury or death if your vehicle impacts a pedestrian.

If the pop-up hood message comes on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

⌘ Pop-up Hood System Care

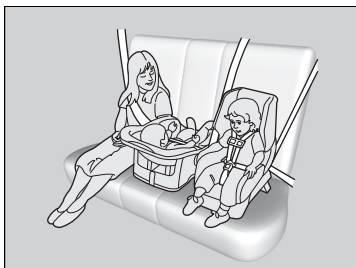
If the front bumper is damaged, have the vehicle checked by a dealer even if the pop-up hood system did not activate.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

► Protecting Child Passengers

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

Malaysian models

Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

► **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 65

Except Malaysian models

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

Malaysian models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

⚠ WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

► Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

► **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 168

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

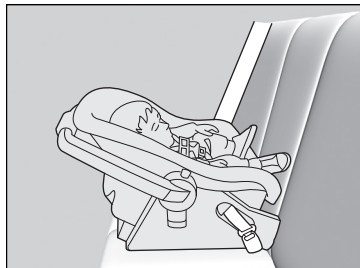
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

► **Safety Labels** P. 84

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.

Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

► Protecting Infants

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

►► Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

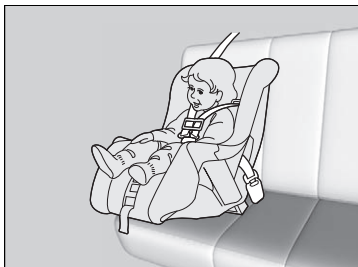
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

►► Protecting Smaller Children

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

✎ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend a rear-facing or a front facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

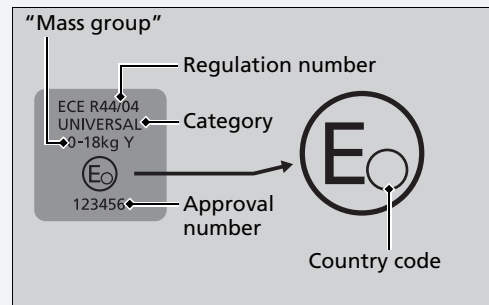
Malaysian models

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

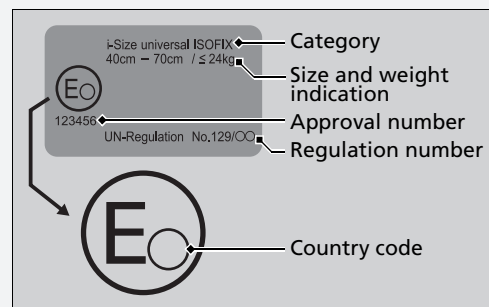
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label

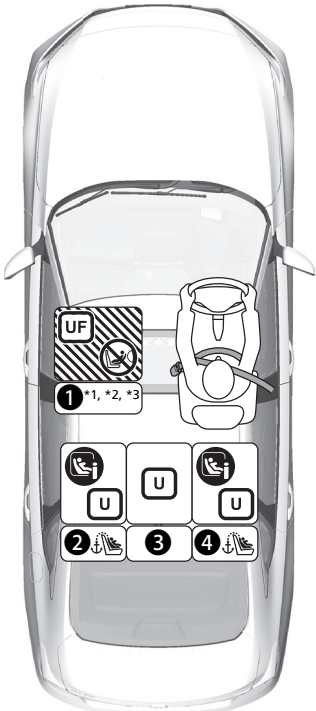


Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



Malaysian models

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
*2: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat back to the position of 14 degrees from the front most lock position.
*3: When installing a prospective junior seat approved by UN R 129, adjust the seat back to the 22 degrees position from the front most lock position and remove the head rest.

Seat position number	Seating position			
	①	②	③	④
	Front passenger* ¹	2nd row		
		Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (YES/NO)	YES* ² Forward facing only	YES	YES	YES
i-Size seating position (YES/NO)	NO	YES	NO	YES
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS* ⁴ (YES/NO)	YES	YES	YES	YES
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	NO	NO	NO	NO
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	NO	R3	NO	R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	NO	F3	NO	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	B3* ³	B3	B3	B3

*1: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.

*2: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat back to the position of 14 degrees from the front most lock position.

*3: When installing a prospective junior seat approved by UN R 129, adjust the seat back to the 22 degrees position from the front most lock position and remove the head rest.

*4: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

The child seat with the support leg can also be installed in the seating position where i-Size child seat is not mountable. However, the central seat is excluded.

►► Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Malaysian models

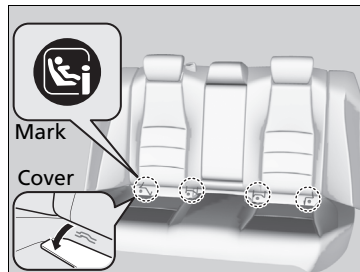
Malaysian Genuine CRS List

R44

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	Honda baby safe	Universal
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Semi-universal ISOFIX
	Honda ISOFIX Neo	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	Honda baby safe	Universal
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Semi-universal ISOFIX
	Honda ISOFIX Neo	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
Group I 9 to 18kg	Honda ISOFIX (Belted)	Universal ISOFIX Universal
	Honda ISOFIX Neo	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Front facing)
Group II, III 15 to 36 kg	—	—

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



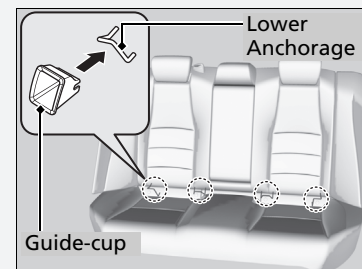
1. Locate the anchor marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
2. Pull out the anchor covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.

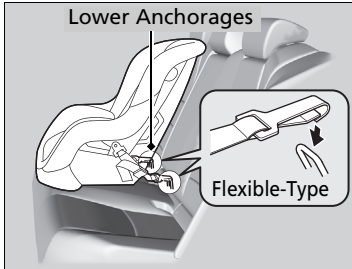
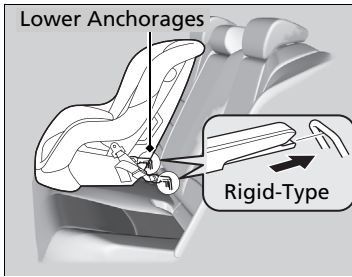
►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint system to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

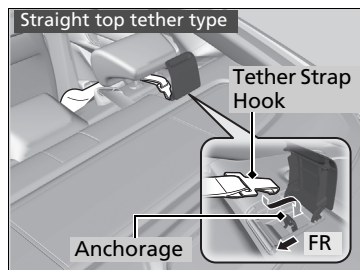
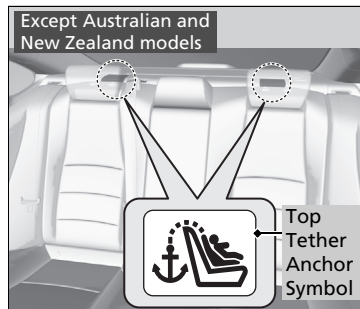
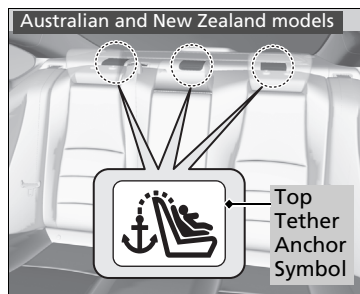
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.





3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.



Child restraint system with tether strap

4. Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint.

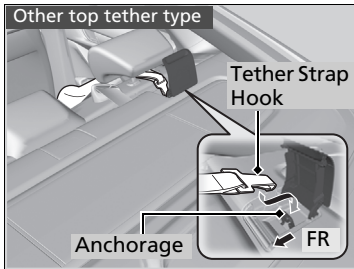
5. Pull up the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



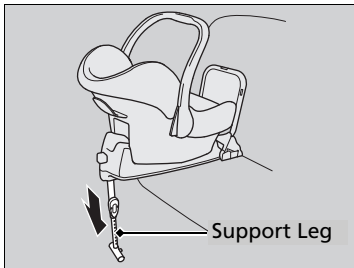
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



Child restraint system with support leg

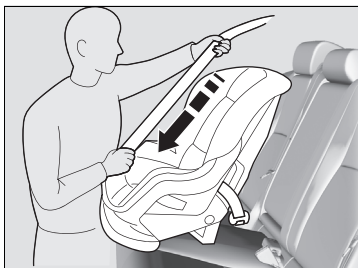
4. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
 - Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
 - Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.

► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

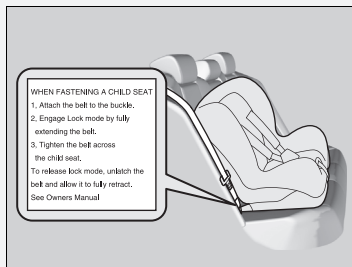
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
 4. Let the seat belt retract several centimetres and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
- If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor, pull the shoulder part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

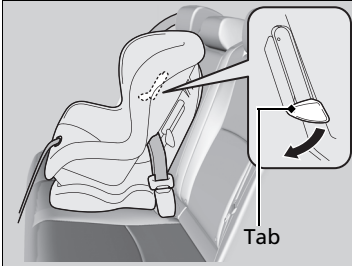
The seat belt with a lockable retractor has a label as shown in the image.





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.



Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.

4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

► When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

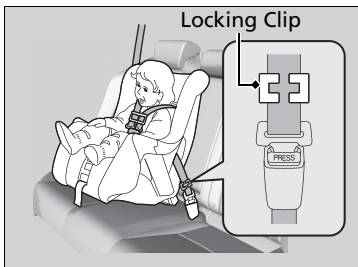
Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



All models

6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



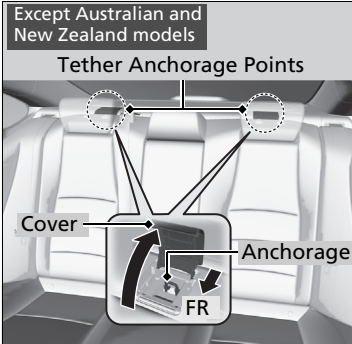
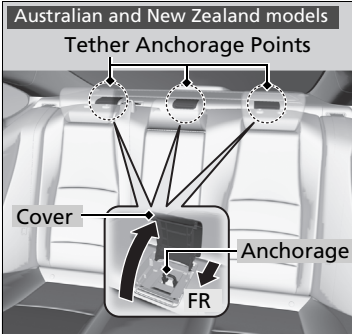
Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate.
Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate.
Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

Adding Security with a Tether



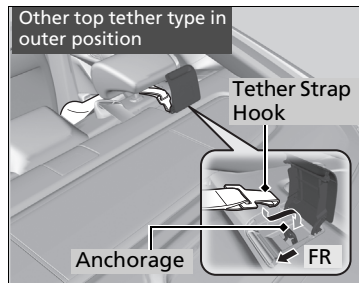
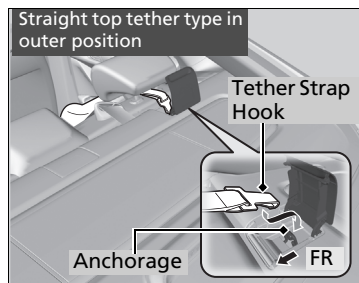
A tether anchorage point is provided behind each or outer rear seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.

Adding Security with a Tether

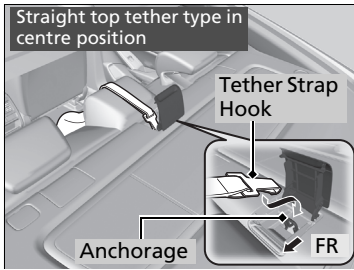
WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system when using the seat belt or lower anchorages.



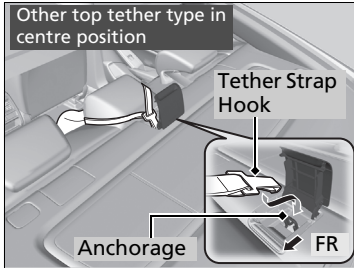
Outer position

2. Pull up the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.



Straight top tether type in centre position

2. Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.



Other top tether type in centre position

2. Route the tether strap over the side of the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

All models

3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

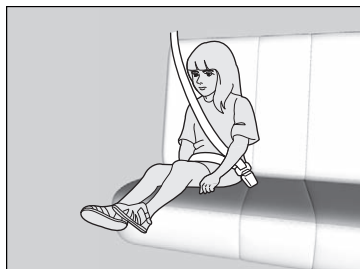
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

►► Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

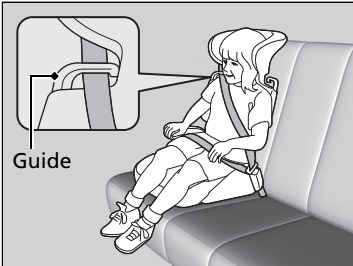
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

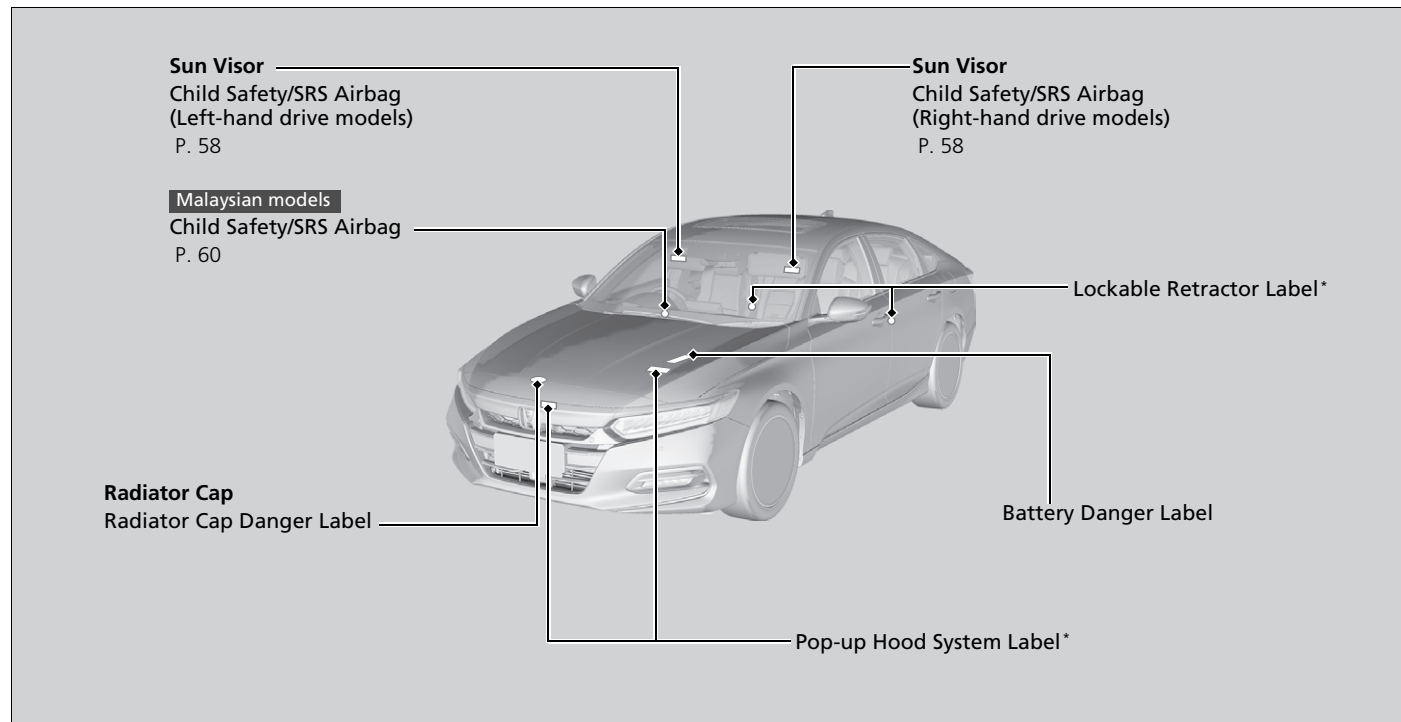
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.

































Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.













- Indicators** 86
 - Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages..... 105
- Gauges and Displays**
 - Gauges..... 125
 - Driver Information Interface 126
 - Head-Up Display* 144


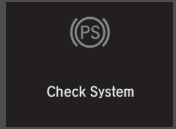
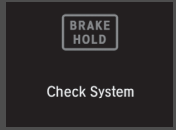

* Not available on all models









	*1 Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 87
	*1 Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 88
	*1 Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→ P. 90
	*1 Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 90
	*1 Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 90
	*1 Charging System Indicator	→ P. 90
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	→ P. 91
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/ Shift Indicator*	→ P. 91
	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 91
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 92
	Low Fuel Indicator	→ P. 92
	*1 Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	→ P. 93
	*1 Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 93
	*1 Auto High-Beam Indicator*	→ P. 93
	*1 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 94
	*1 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	→ P. 95
	*1 Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 95
	*1 Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	→ P. 96
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 97
	High Beam Indicator	→ P. 97
	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 97
	Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 97
	System Message Indicator	→ P. 98
	ECON Mode Indicator	→ P. 99
	SPORT Mode Indicator*	→ P. 99
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	→ P. 99
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	→ P. 99
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→ P. 98
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→ P. 98
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 100
ACC*	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)*	→ P. 101
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 101
LKAS*	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*	→ P. 101
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 102
	*1 Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*	→ P. 104









*1 : When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.








Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you pull or push the electric parking brake switch when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is set. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ❏ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 553 • Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber) - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. • Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ❏ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 553 • Blinks and the brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ❏ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on P. 554 	<div>  Release Parking Brake </div> <div>  Brake Fluid Low </div> <div>  Check System </div> <div>  Check System </div>


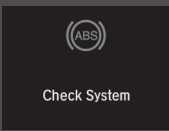

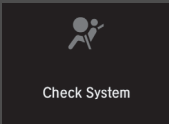


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.Comes on while driving - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	<div> Check System</div> <div> Check System</div> <div> Check System</div> <div> Check System</div>






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	Models with Honda smart parking assist system <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the Honda smart parking assist system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this message appears, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but Honda smart parking assist system can not be activated. ➤ Honda Smart Parking Assist System* P. 439 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system. 	➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 410	
		Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➤ Load Limit P. 329 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	








Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. 	<p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 410</p>	 Brake Hold System Standby
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. 	<p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 410</p>	—
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer. <p>➤ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 552</p>	 Check System  Emission System Problem. Avoid Acceleration And High Speed.
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <p>➤ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 552</p>	 Check System






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift lever position. 	 Shifting P. 339, 341	—
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/ Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. 	 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 343	—
	Transmission System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	 Check System
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem and the performance of the vehicle is reduced. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Avoid sudden starts, sudden acceleration and high speed, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	 Transmission System Problem. Avoid Acceleration And High Speed.
		Models with paddle shifters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem and the paddle shifters cannot be used. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	 Transmission System Problem. Paddle Shifting Not Available.








Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and the beeper* sounds for a few seconds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON, then the indicator comes on. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. Blinks while driving if either you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Seat Belt Reminder P. 36 	 Fasten Seat Belt  Fasten Passenger's Seat Belt
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 8.4 L left). Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 Fuel Low  Check Fuel Gauge System

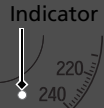
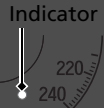




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➤ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 412 	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supplemental restraint system Side airbag system Side curtain airbag system Seat belt tensioner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	➤ Auto High-Beam* P. 183	







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system or hill start assist system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 351 	<div>  <p>Check System</p> </div> <div>  <p>Check System</p> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div>  <p>Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...</p> </div>

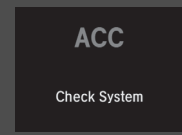
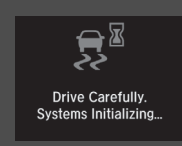


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you deactivate VSA. 	 VSA On and Off P. 352	 Vehicle Stability Assist OFF
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 Drive Carefully, Systems Initializing...
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 555 	 Check System

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete. Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. The system has not been initialised. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be initialised.  Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 354 	 Check Tyre Pressure
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced, and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can. 	 Check System
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does not blink or blinks rapidly  Replacing Light Bulbs P. 497 	—
		Models with emergency stop signal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	 Emergency Stop Signal P. 414	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in AUTO when the exterior lights are on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened. 	—
	Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fog lights are on. 	 Fog Lights* P. 180	—




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	—
	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	 Security System Alarm P. 167	—
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, press the  (home) button to see the message again. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Accessing contents in the main display P. 126 Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the left selector wheel is pressed. 	—




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the ECON mode is on. 	➤ ECON Mode P. 346	
	SPORT Mode Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the SPORT button. The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as SPORT mode is on. 	➤ SPORT Mode* P. 345	
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the CRUISE button. 	➤ Cruise Control* P. 347	—
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control. 	➤ Cruise Control* P. 347	—






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 <p>ACC Check System</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 <p>Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.  Load Limit P. 329 	 <p>—</p>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	<p>➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370</p>	—
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<p>LKAS</p> <p>Check System</p>
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	<p>➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 386</p>	—


* Not available on all models



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 Check System
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected and then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...


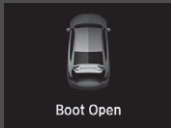



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel. The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the radar sensor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 361 ➤ Radar Sensor P. 405 	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed</p>
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Front Sensor Camera P. 403 	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High</p>





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. Front Sensor Camera P. 403 	 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. Load Limit P. 329 	—
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are on. Lights up in green and grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS is off. Lights up in grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are off. 	Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off P. 400 CMBS On and Off P. 364	 Road Departure Mitigation: OFF  Collision Mitigation Braking System OFF





Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages





The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the  (home) button, select **Warnings**, then press the left selector wheel to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

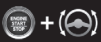





Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>STOP Critical System Failure Detected. Stop Driving When Safe</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is no longer able to run due to a malfunction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately stop in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
 <p>Apply Parking Brake To Keep Vehicle Stationary</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a risk that the vehicle will move unexpectedly after you have stopped due to a malfunction with the vehicle. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the vehicle is stopped, apply the parking brake. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.





Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Door Open</p>  <p>Boot Open</p>  <p>Door And Boot Open</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears if any door or the boot is not completely closed. • Appears if any door or the boot is opened while driving. The beeper sounds. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disappears when all doors and the boot are closed.
 <p>Oil Pressure Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when the engine oil pressure is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place.  If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears P. 551





Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Check System. Power Reduced</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the shutter grille, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 <p>Outside Temperature Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the power mode is in ON. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.
 <p>Engine Oil Replacement Due Soon</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. Consequently, Engine Oil Replacement Due Now and Engine Oil Replacement Overdue follow. 	<p>► Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information P. 477</p>
 <p>Check Charging System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ► Checking the Battery P. 516




Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high. 	<p>► Overheating P. 549</p>
 <p>Apply Brake Pedal</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately depress the brake pedal.
 <p>Brake Hold System OFF</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off. 	<p>► Automatic Brake Hold P. 410</p>
 <p>To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fasten the driver's seat belt. <p>► Automatic Brake Hold P. 410</p>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>To Disable Brake Hold: Brake + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 410
 <p>Parking Brake Engaged</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 410 ➤ Parking Brake P. 406
 <p>To Release Parking Brake: Brake + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Parking Brake P. 406
 <p>To Start Engine: Brake + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Starting the Engine P. 331






Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>To Unlock Wheel: Push + Turn</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.
 <p>Accessory Mode</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	—
 <p>To Turn Vehicle OFF: Push Twice</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.  ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 173
 <p>Keyless Remote Not Detected</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.  Keyless Remote Reminder P. 175

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Change Keyless Remote Battery</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the battery as soon as possible. ► Replacing the Button Battery P. 519
 <p>To Start Engine: Shift To Park</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you try to start the engine when the transmission is in [N] and the parking brake is disengaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Put the transmission into [P], then start the engine in the normal procedure. ► Starting the Engine P. 331
 <p>To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the keyless remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bring the keyless remote in front of the ENGINE START/STOP button to be touched with. ► If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 542
 <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the starter system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



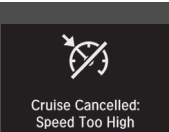
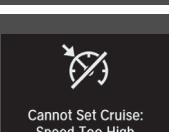
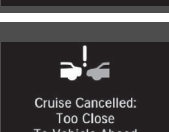
Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 <p>HOLD OFF Pressing Button Again Twice Or Holding Will Cause Ignition OFF & Power Loss</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button while the vehicle is moving. 	<p>➤ Emergency Engine Stop P. 543</p>
 <p>Driver Attention Level Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. 	<p>➤ Driver Attention Monitor P. 139</p>
 <p>Driver Attention Level Low. Take A Rest</p>		

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Check System	Models with pop-up hood system <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the pop-up hood system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible. ► Pop-up Hood System* P. 55
	Models with rear seat belt reminder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed. 	► Seat Belt Reminder P. 36
 Shift To Park	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the shift lever to P, then press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice.






* Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 <p>Check Headlights</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the headlights. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.
 <p>Check System</p>	<p>Models with parking sensor system</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
 <p>Approaching Object</p>	<p>Models with parking sensor system</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there are obstacles around the sensors. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for obstacles near your vehicle to make sure it is safe to park.
 <p>Check System</p>	<p>Models with auto high-beam</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manually operate the headlight switch and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.





Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with Low Speed Follow to cancel improves. Press the RES/+ button. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 361 ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when ACC with Low Speed Follow is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduce the speed, then reset ACC with Low Speed Follow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC with Low Speed Follow. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduce the speed, then set ACC with Low Speed Follow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 Cruise Cancelled: Too Close To Vehicle Ahead	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370

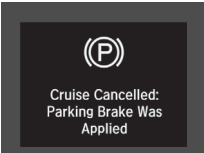
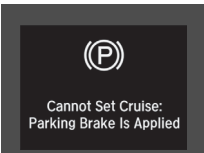
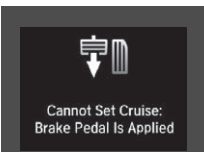
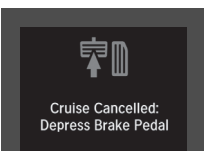
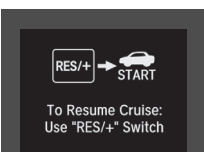
Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Too Close To Vehicle Ahead</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the SET/- button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Fasten Seat Belt</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Fasten Seat Belt</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the SET/- button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Shift To Drive</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the transmission is put into any position other than D or S* while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Shift To Drive</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the SET/- button while the transmission is in any position other than D or S*. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370





Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep</p>  <p>Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep</p>  <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the SET/- button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370




Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Parking Brake Was Applied</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370 ➤ Parking Brake P. 406
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Parking Brake Is Applied</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the SET/– button while the parking brake is applied. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370 ➤ Parking Brake P. 406
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Brake Pedal Is Applied</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the SET/– button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Depress Brake Pedal</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if ACC with Low Speed Follow is cancelled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately depress the brake pedal.
 <p>To Resume Cruise: Use "RES/+" Switch</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle ahead of you resumes driving, after your vehicle has been stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the RES/+ or SET/– button or depress the accelerator pedal to resume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow



Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Loss Of Traction</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. <p>➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370</p>
 <p>Cruise Will Cancel Soon: Slope Too Steep</p> <p>▼</p>  <p>Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep. Control Vehicle Speed</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears just before the ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled when you are descending a long hill etc (The following interval is automatically set to extra long). Appears when the ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. 	<p>➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370</p>
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you are descending a long hill etc and you press the RES/+ or SET/- button. 	<p>➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 370</p>

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. <p>➤ Radar Sensor P. 405</p>
 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems and auto high-beam cannot be activated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. Disappears - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally. <p>➤ Front Sensor Camera P. 403</p> <p>➤ Auto High-Beam* P. 183</p>
 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera. <p>➤ Front Sensor Camera P. 403</p> <p>➤ Auto High-Beam* P. 183</p>




Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Except Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models


Message	Condition	Explanation
 (Amber)	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 386
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.
	Road Departure Mitigation System <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When you selected Warning Only <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. When you selected Early, Normal or Delayed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Road Departure Mitigation System P. 397 You can change the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system. Early, Normal, Delayed, and Warning Only can be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Customized Features P. 290
 (White)	Road Departure Mitigation System <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When you selected Early <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane. 	—

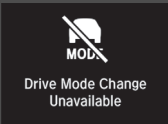

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div>  <p>(Amber)</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 386 ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 397
<div>  <p>(Red)</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all and the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane. A beeper will also sound. Blinks if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all. A beeper will also sound. If the driver continues to drive in this manner, the beeper will turn to a single long beep and LKAS will be deactivated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 386 Take direct control of the steering; the message will disappear. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 386
<div>  <p>(White)</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 397

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously if selected by customization.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action. ➤ Indicators P. 86

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Drive Mode Change Unavailable</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if the ECON mode or SPORT mode* cannot be changed due to certain situations, such as a system error or adverse driving conditions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ ECON Mode P. 346➤ SPORT Mode* P. 345
 <p>To Start Driving: Brake + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by remote engine start.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Remote Engine Start P. 333

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.


➤ **Overheating** P. 549

Driver Information Interface


The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature, and other gauges. It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

■ Switching the Display

■ Accessing contents in the main display

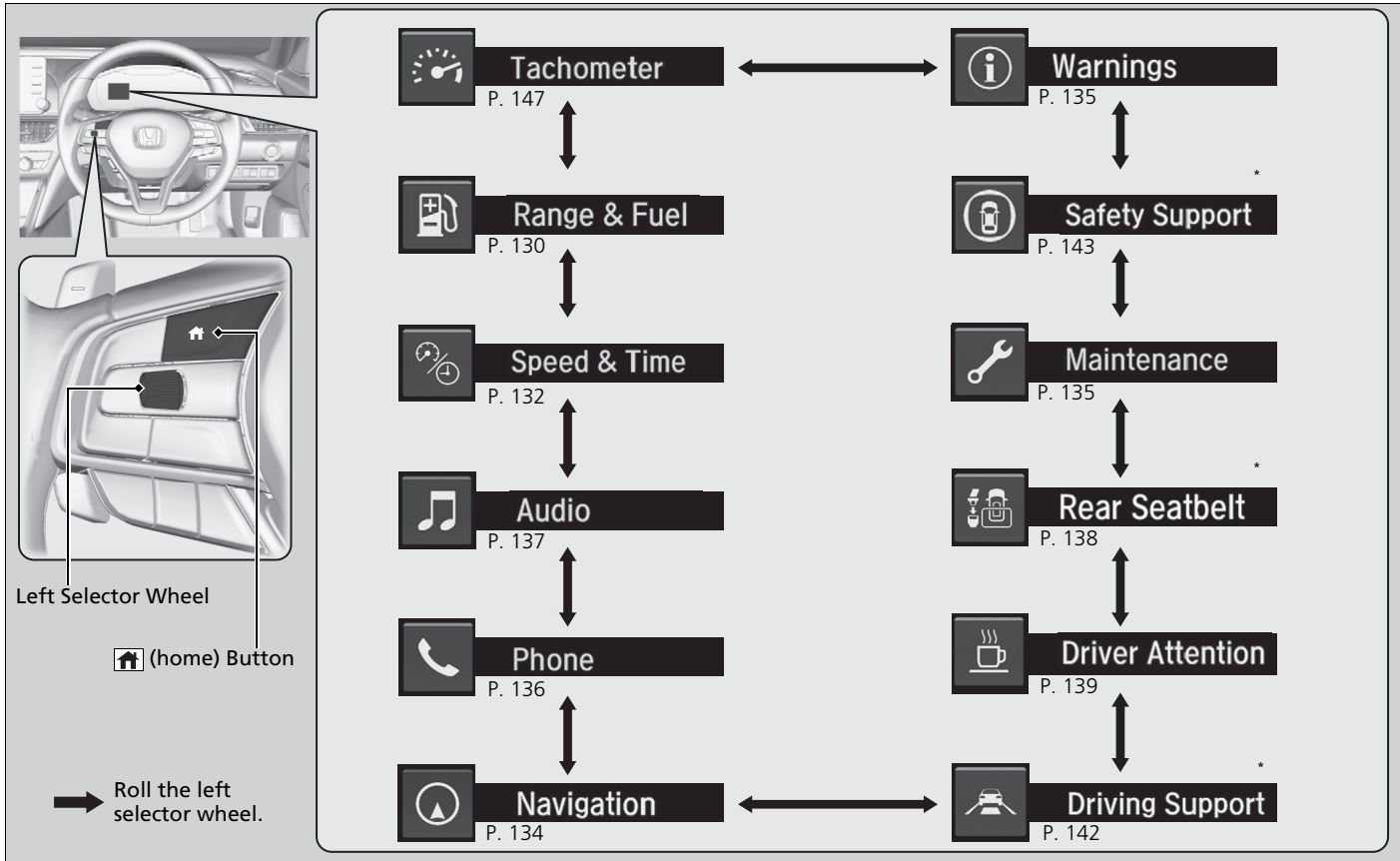
Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

► Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the  (back) button.

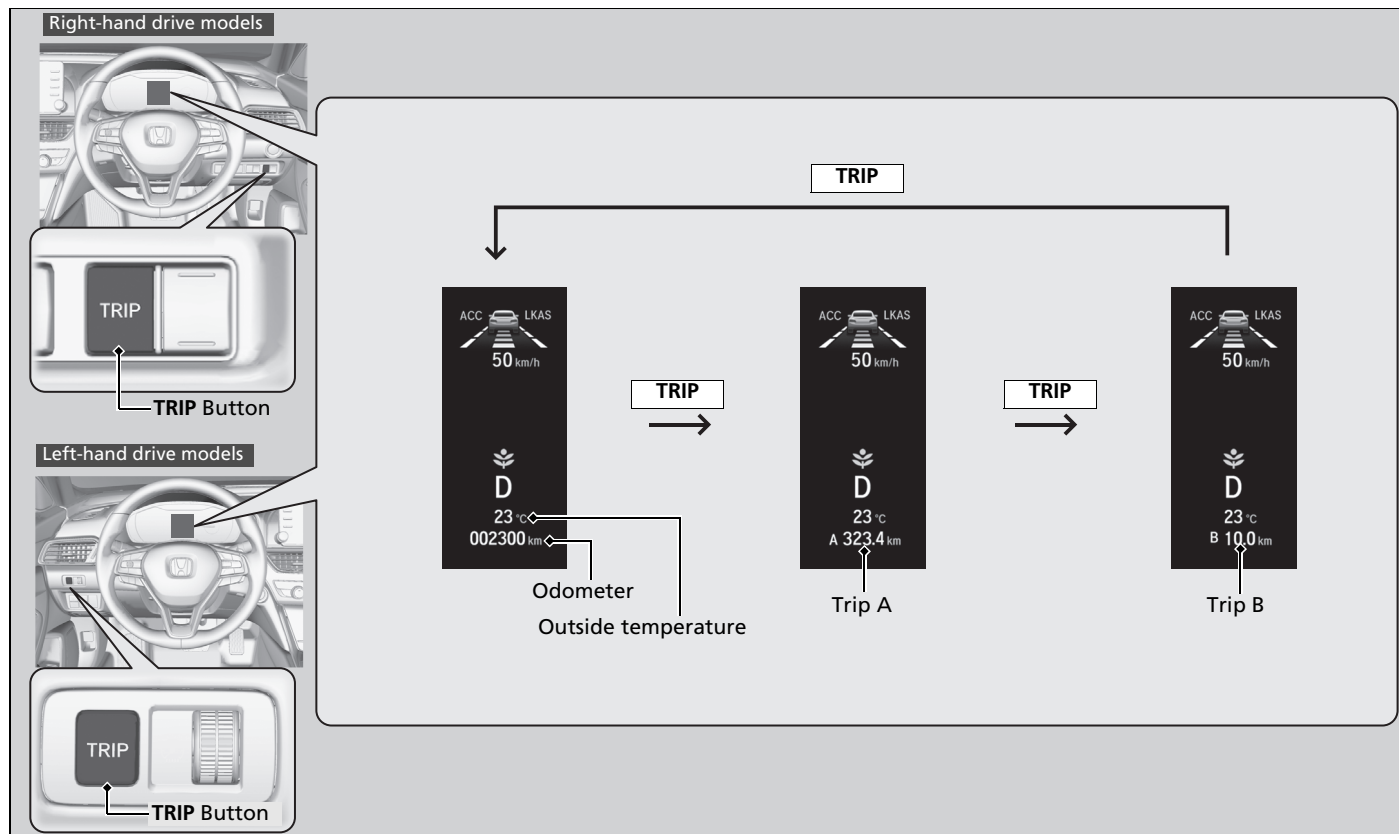
You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents using the audio/information screen.

► **Customizing the Meter** P. 248



■ Sub display

Press the **TRIP** button to change the display.



■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **TRIP** Button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Use the customized features in the audio/information screen to correct the temperature.

► **Customized Features** P. 290

► Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **TRIP** Button.

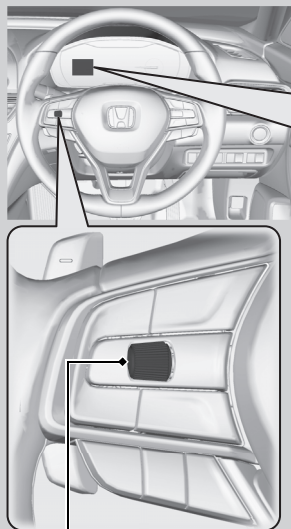
► Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

■ Range & Fuel

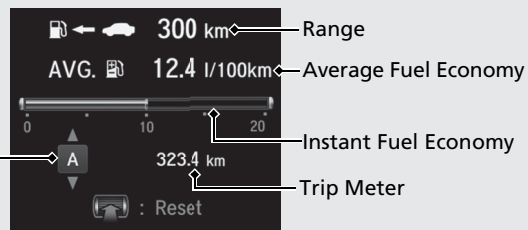
Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip computer A and trip computer B.



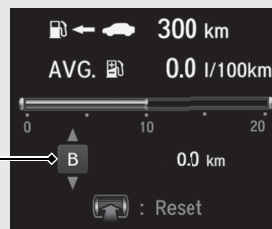
Left Selector Wheel

➡ Roll the left selector wheel.

Trip Computer A



Trip Computer B



■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

- The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy

Except Vietnamese, Laotian, Australian and New Zealand models

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l.

Vietnamese, Laotian, Australian and New Zealand models

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100km.

All models

The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Except Vietnamese, Laotian, Australian and New Zealand models

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.

Vietnamese, Laotian, Australian and New Zealand models

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

» Trip meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by rolling the left selector wheel.

Resetting the trip meter in the **Range & Fuel**, the trip meter in the sub display resets at the same time.

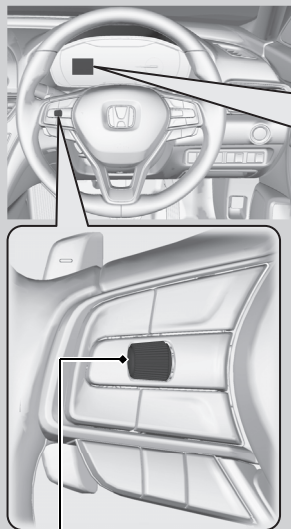
» Average fuel economy

You can change when the average fuel economy is reset.

► **Customized Features** P. 290

■ Speed & Time

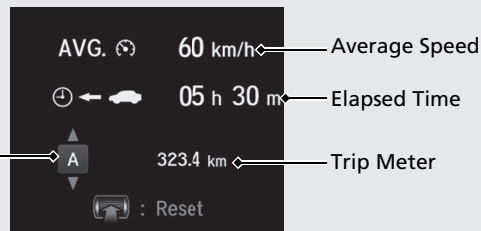
Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip computer A and trip computer B.



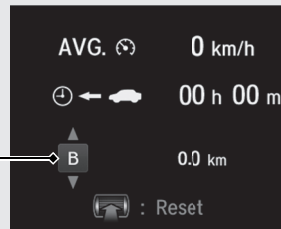
Left Selector Wheel

➡ Roll the left selector wheel.

Trip Computer A



Trip Computer B



■ Trip meter

► Trip meter P. 131

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

» Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

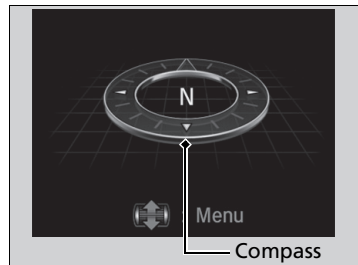
► **Customized Features** P. 290

» Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

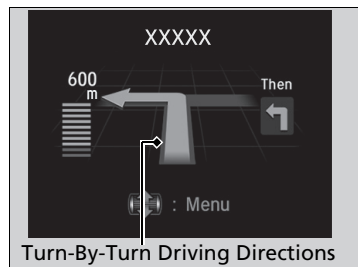
► **Customized Features** P. 290

Navigation



■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.



■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system*, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

► Refer to the Navigation System Manual

► Android Auto P. 275

► Apple CarPlay P. 272

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during route guidance.

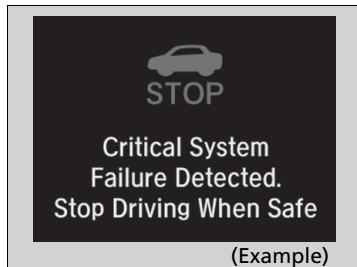
► **Customized Features** P. 290

Models with navigation system

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

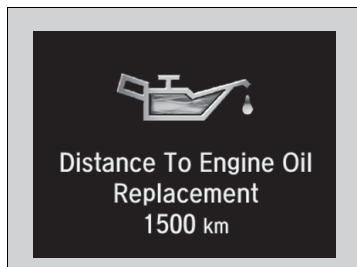
► **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Warnings



► **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 105

Maintenance



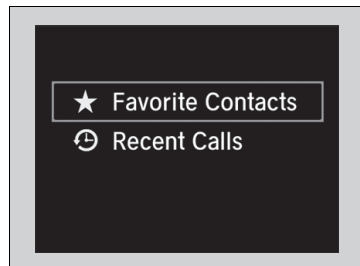
Shows the remaining oil life.

► **Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information** P. 477

Warnings

If there are no Warnings, **No Current Information** message appears on the driver information interface.

Phone



Shows the current phone information.

► **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System**

P. 309

Tachometer

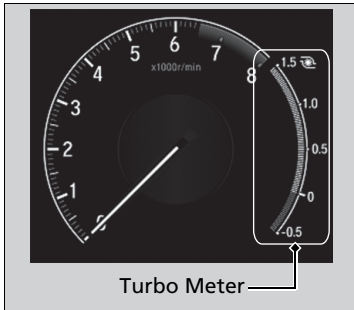


Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

►► Tachometer

You can turn on or off the tachometer display when you does not select the **Tachometer** on the driver information interface.

► **Customized Features** P. 290



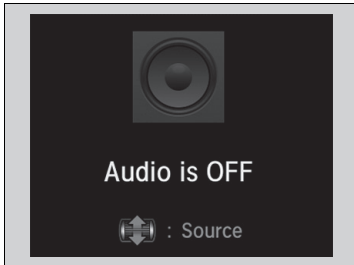
Models with SPORT mode

■ Turbo Meter

When the turbo charger is producing boost, this meter shows the boost pressure.

When the SPORT mode is turned on while the tachometer appears, the turbo meter appears on the driver information interface.

Audio



Shows the current audio information.

🔧 **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 235

■ Rear Seat Belt Reminder*

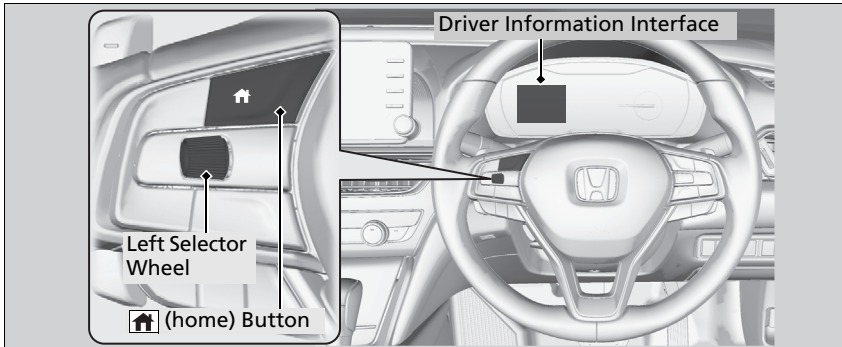


Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➤ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 36

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyzes steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



When you select **Driver Attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

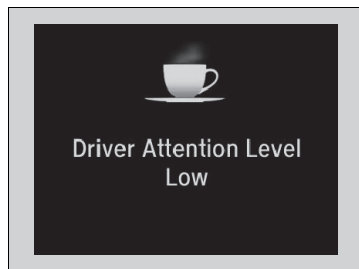
► Accessing contents in the main display

P. 126

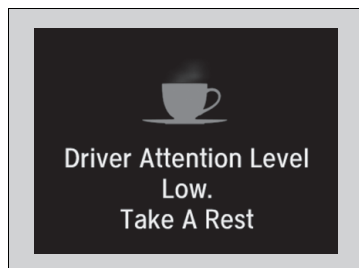
Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.

Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



If two bars light up, the **Driver Attention Level Low** message will appear.



If one bar lights up, the **Driver Attention Level Low. Take A Rest** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.

If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

The message will disappear when the left selector wheel is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The message does not appear when the traveling time is 30 minutes or less.

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**

- The engine is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**

- The vehicle must be traveling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* is active.
 ➤ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 386
- The condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert**, **Tactile Alert**, or **OFF**.

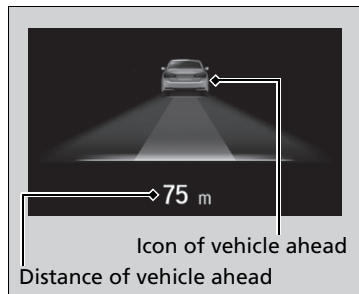
➤ **Customized Features** P. 290

☒ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

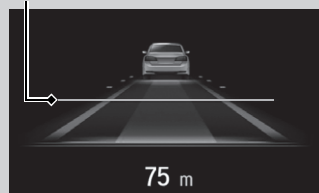
* Not available on all models

■ Driving Support Information *



When ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS is in On

Set Vehicle Interval



ACC on: The section behind the vehicle icon turns green.

LKAS on: The lane outlines appear on the display.

LKAS starts: The lane lines change to solid ones.

LKAS suspend: The lane lines change to dotted ones.

Shows the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead.

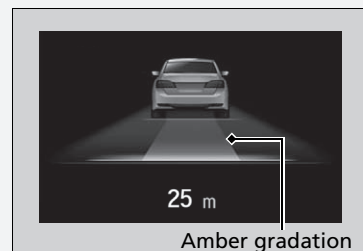
Informs you whether ACC with Low Speed Follow and/or LKAS is activated or not. If ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated, the set following interval is displayed. If LKAS is activated, the displayed lane marks change to indicate that LKAS is activated.

► **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 370

► **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 386

►► Driving Support Information *

In case ACC with Low Speed Follow is not activated, when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead becomes to small, the section behind the vehicle icon turns amber and alerts you.

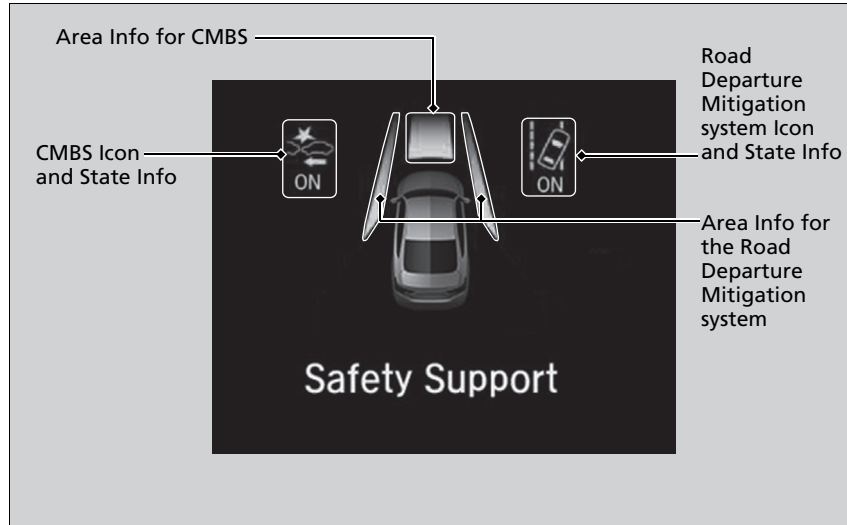


■ Safety Support*

Indicates the state of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the state of any of the above mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



▣ Safety Support*

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.

▣ **Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off** P. 400

▣ **CMBS On and Off** P. 364


You can also confirm the state of the each function by the colour of the safety support indicator.

▣ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*** P. 102

▣ **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*** P. 104



* Not available on all models

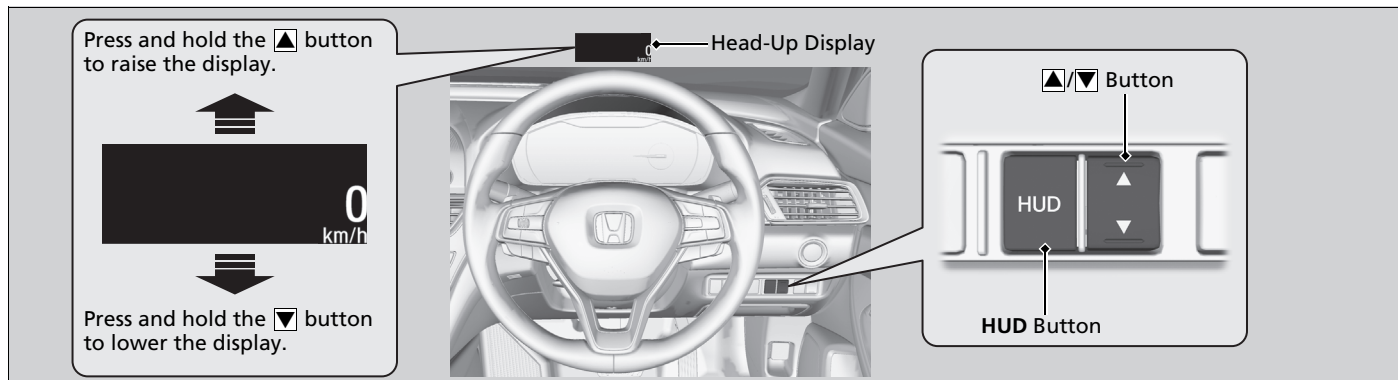
Head-Up Display*

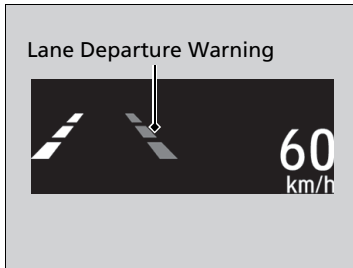
Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, tachometer, shift lever position indicator, or turn-by-turn directions along with the vehicle speed. You can choose which item to be displayed using the  (HUD) button on the steering wheel. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

To turn the head-up display on and off: Press the **HUD** button on the driver side control panel.


The display can be moved up and down to come level with your eyes.

To raise or lower the head-up display: Press and hold the  or  button until the desired position is reached.




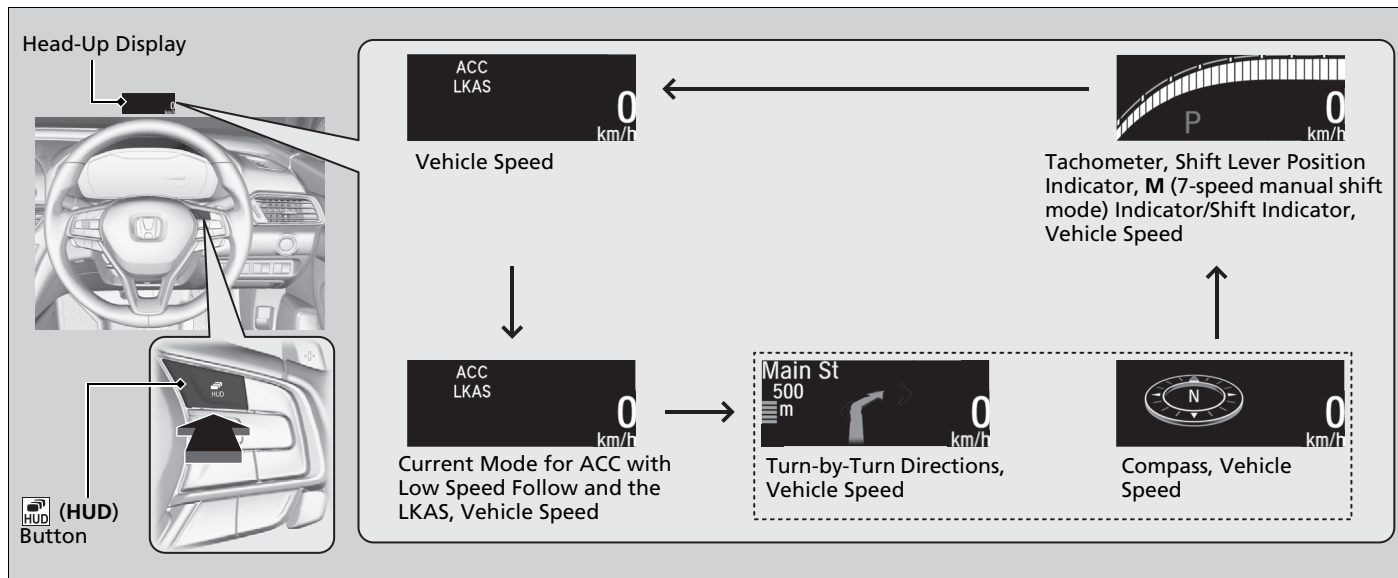


The display also shows the following warnings.

- **Lane Departure Warning:** When your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines, the lane departure warning appears.
 - **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)**
P. 386
- **Head-up Warning Lights:**
Flash when the  message appears on the driver information interface.
 - **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 361
 - **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 370

■ To Change Head-Up Display Content

Each time you press the  (HUD) button on the steering wheel, the head-up display content will change.



■ Vehicle Speed

Shows your driving speed in km/h.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions as a bar graph.

■ Shift Lever Position Indicator

Shows the current shift lever position.

■ M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator

Shows the current mode for the 7-speed manual shift mode.

■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS.

➤ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 370

➤ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 386

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

➤ Turn-by-Turn Directions

The head-up display shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 290

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock	150
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key Type and Functions	151
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength	153
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	154
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	160
Childproof Door Locks	162
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*	163
Opening and Closing the Boot	164
Security System	
Immobilizer System	166
Security System Alarm	167
Opening and Closing the Windows	168

Sunroof*	171
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel	
ENGINE START/STOP Button	173
Turn Signals	176
Light Switches	177
Fog Lights*	180
Active Cornering Lights*	181
Daytime Running Lights	182
Auto High-Beam*	183
Wipers and Washers	186
Brightness Control	188
Rear Demister Button	190
Driving Position Memory System*	191
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	193

Adjusting the Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	194
Power Door Mirrors	195
Adjusting the Seats	
Front Seats	197
Rear Seats	201
Maintain a Proper Sitting Position	202
Head Restraints	203
Armrest	206
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items	207
Climate Control System	
Using Automatic Climate Control	223
Automatic Climate Control Sensors ...	226


* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock



You can adjust the time manually in the audio/information screen, with the power mode in ON.

Adjusting the Time



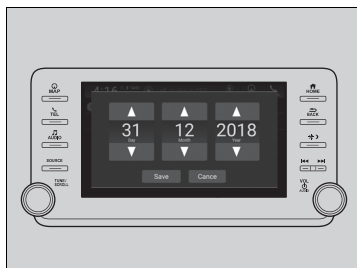
1. Press the , then select **Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select **Day & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust time:

6. Select **Set Time**.
7. Select /.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

To adjust date:

6. Select **Set Date**.
7. Select /.
8. Select **Save** to set the date.





Adjusting the Clock


The clock is automatically updated through the GPS, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Clock

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display or the **Clock** icon on the home screen.

1. Touch the clock on the display.
The clock screen of the select face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Day & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting /.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customize the clock settings.

 **Customized Features** P. 290

Key Type and Functions

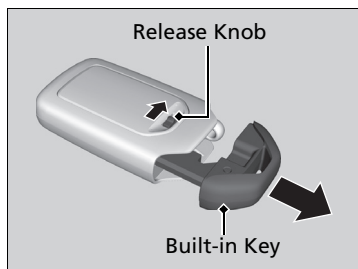
This vehicle comes with the following key:



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors, boot, and fuel fill door.

You can also use the remote transmitter or keyless access system to lock and unlock all the doors, fuel fill door and to open the boot.

Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

Key Type and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 166

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

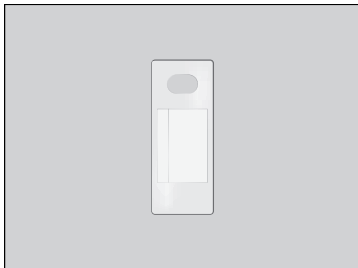
If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

➤ **Remote Engine Start** P. 333

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and fuel fill door, opening the boot, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and fuel fill door, opening the boot, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

⚠ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

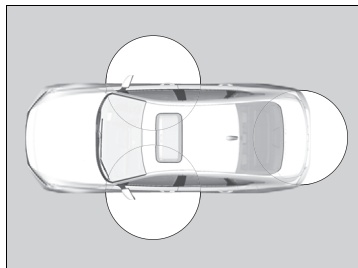
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

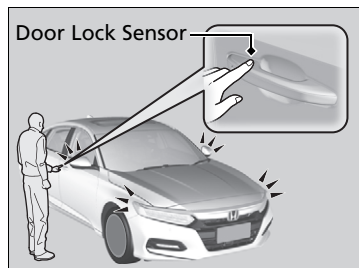
■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door and open the boot.

You can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle. You can open the boot within about 80 cm radius from the boot release button.

■ Locking the doors



Touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

- Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors, fuel fill door lock; and the security system sets.

► Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.

► **Interior Lights** P. 207

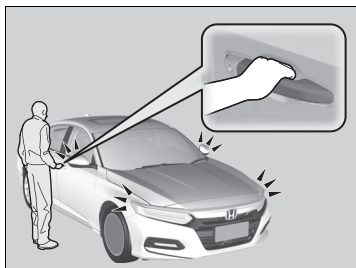
► Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and boot will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

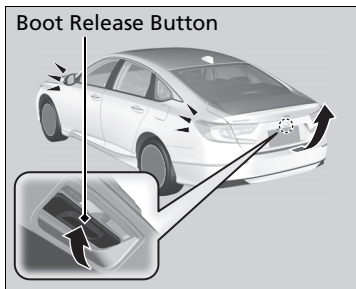
- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.

■ Unlocking the doors and the boot



Grab the front door handle:

- ▶ All doors and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the boot release button:

- ▶ The boot unlocks and opens.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds.

✎ **Using the Boot Release Button** P. 165

✎ Using the Keyless Access System

- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked.
- If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

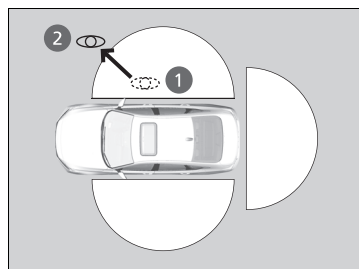
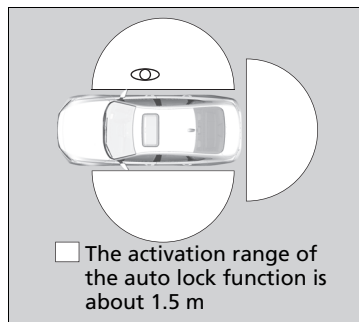
The beep settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

✎ **Customized Features** P. 290

Australian and New Zealand models

When you go into the front side of the keyless access system working range with all the doors locked, the all door outer handle ambient lights come on for 30 seconds.

The lights do not come on if you have previously stayed within the range for more than six minutes, or the doors have been locked for three days. The feature activates again after you unlock the doors, then lock the doors.



■ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying the keyless remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.

► The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.

► Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

► Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen. If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the keyless remote that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

► **Customized Features** P. 290

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be delayed until all doors are closed.

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The remote is inside the vehicle.
- The beeper will not sound.
- The remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
- The beeper will sound.

If you press the unlock button on the keyless remote within the operation range soon after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
► The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

⌘ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

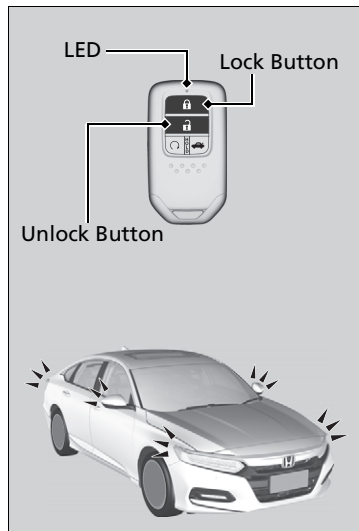
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the boot.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

- Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- Some exterior lights flash, the beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

- Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors and fuel fill door unlocks.

►► Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

► **Customized Features** P. 290

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

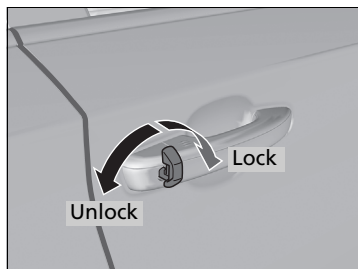
If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

► **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 519

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

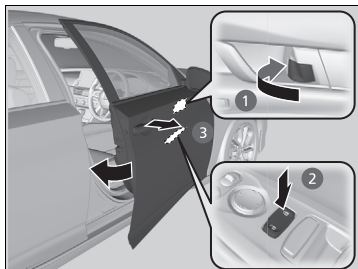
If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's doors

Push the lock tab forward **①** or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction **②**, then pull and hold the outside door handle **③**. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

⌘ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

Except Latin American, Bangladeshi and Sri Lankan models

Unlocking the doors with the key cause the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

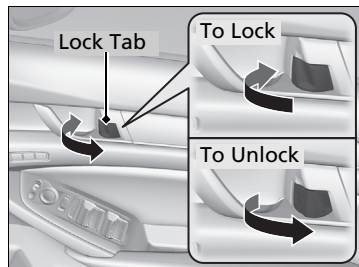
⌘ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors, and fuel fill door lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

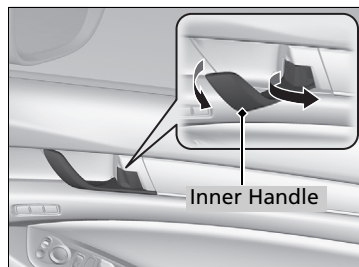
■ Using the Lock Tab



■ **Locking a door**
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**
Pull the lock tab rearward.

■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



Pull the driver's door inner handle.
► The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

►► Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors, fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

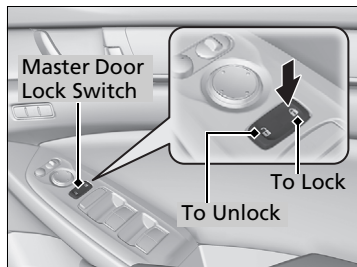
►► Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

The driver's door inner handle is designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 162

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

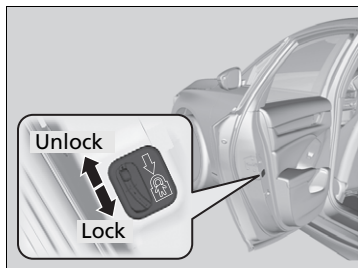


Press the master door lock switch in (as shown) to lock or unlock all doors and fuel fill door.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

►► Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

⌘ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

⌘ **Customized Features** P. 290

* Not available on all models

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

■ Opening the boot

Open the boot all the way.

- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the boot lid may begin to close under its own weight.

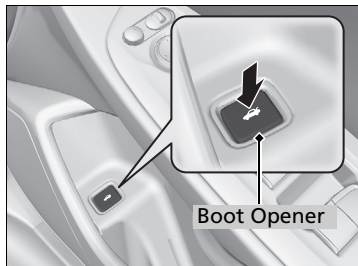
■ Closing the boot

Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

🚨 **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 83

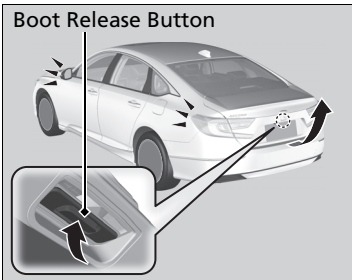
Using the Boot Opener



Pressing and holding the boot opener on the driver's door unlocks and opens the boot.

🚨 **When You Cannot Open the Boot** P. 564

Using the Boot Release Button



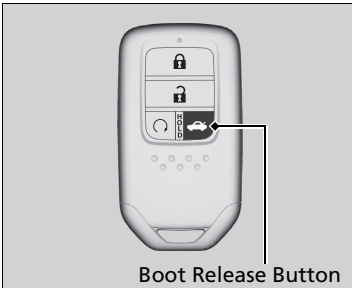
Push up the release button on the boot lid after all the doors are unlocked.

► **When You Cannot Open the Boot** P. 564

Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you carry the keyless remote.

► Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds.

Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

► Using the Boot Release Button

- If you forget the keyless remote inside, the beeper will sound and the boot will not close.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless remote can unlock the boot if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the boot, move the keyless remote away from the boot and close again.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the boot.

► Using the Remote Transmitter

If the driver's door is locked, the boot will automatically lock when you close it. Otherwise, you will have to lock it manually.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.

Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the boot, bonnet or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the boot or doors are opened with the built-in key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some the exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the built-in key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or the power mode is set to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and boot are locked from outside with the built-in key*, the remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the built-in key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

* Not available on all models

▣ Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately five minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than five minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the boot with the boot opener or the boot release handle.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the built-in key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

Except Latin American, Bangladeshi and Sri Lankan models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

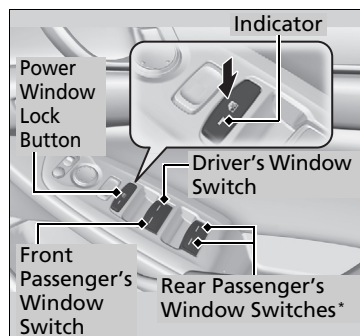
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pressed, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on (indicator on) if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Australian and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

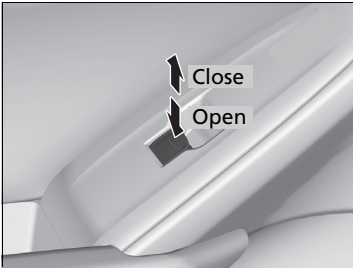
Singaporean models

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

Except Singaporean models

Opening either front door cancels this function.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function *



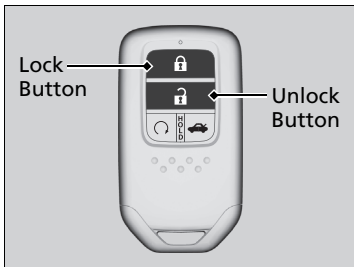
To open: Push the switch down.

To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Except Thai and Malaysian models

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close*: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

► Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

► Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote

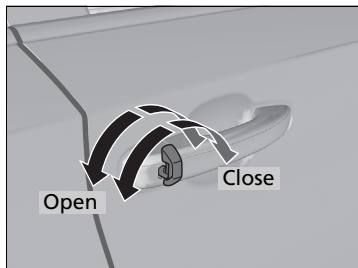
Models with sunroof

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the sunroof will open/close automatically along with them.

* Not available on all models

Except Thai and Malaysian models

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with the key



To open*: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

►► Opening/Closing the Windows with the key

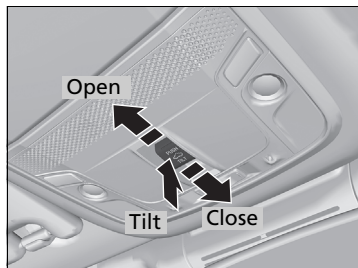
Models with sunroof

If you open/close the windows with the key, the sunroof will open/close automatically along with them.

Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can only operate the sunroof when the power mode is in ON, use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.

■ Using the Sunroof switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the sunroof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

⌘ Opening/Closing the Sunroof

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

» Opening/Closing the Sunroof

Except Australian and New Zealand models

The power sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Australian and New Zealand models

The power sunroof can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Singaporean models

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

Except Singaporean models

Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

Except Thai and Malaysian models

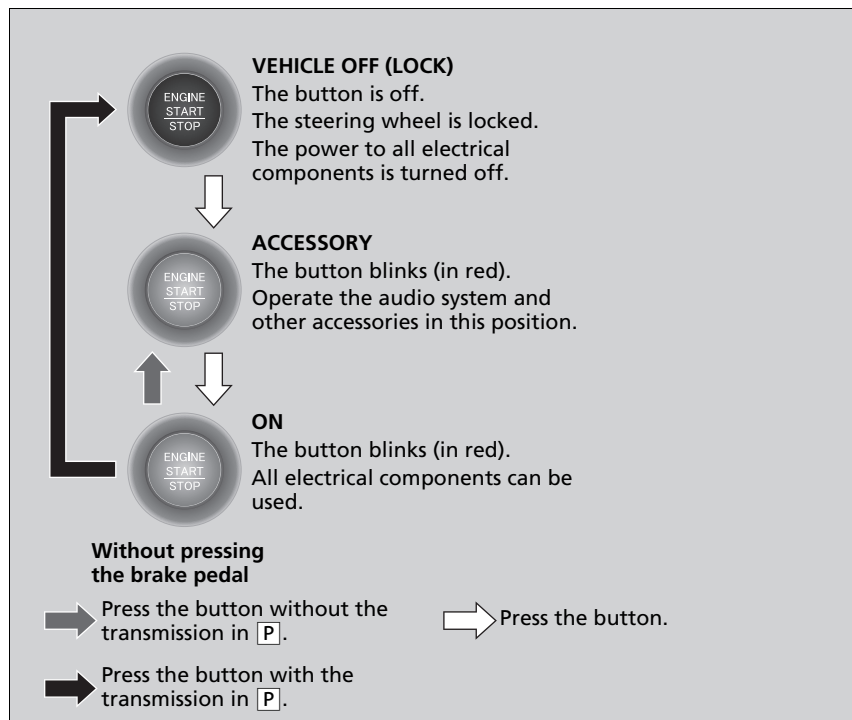
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof.

➤ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote** P. 169

➤ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the key** P. 170

ENGINE START/STOP Button

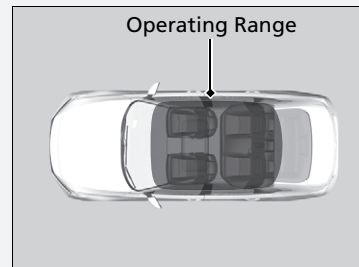
Changing the Power Mode



ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range

You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak
P. 542

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

» ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

Keyless Remote Reminder



Keyless Remote
Not Detected

Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

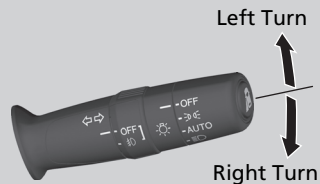
If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals

Right-hand drive models

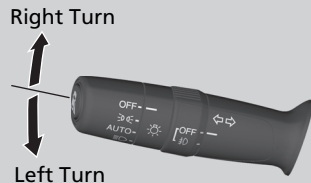


The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ One-touch turn signal

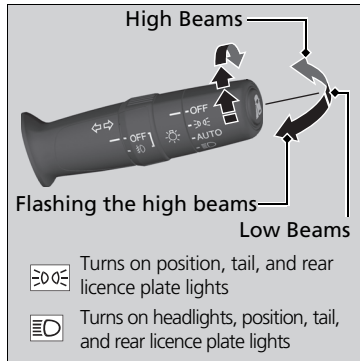
When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times. This feature can be used when signalling for a lane change.

Left-hand drive models



Light Switches

Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Malaysian models

■ Lights off

Turn the light switch to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in **P**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the light switch to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of **P** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

► Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

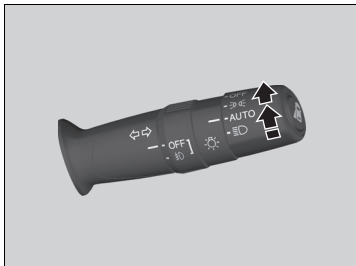
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

► Lights On Indicator P. 97

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

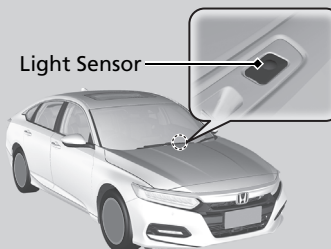
The headlights comes on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

- Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

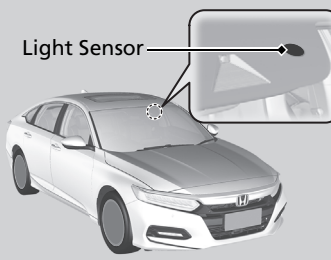
►► Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Models without automatic intermittent wipers



Models with automatic intermittent wipers



■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver’s door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).


The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver’s door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver’s door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

⌘ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

Except Malaysian models

You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
Max	 Bright
High	
Mid	
Low	
Min	
	Dark

➤ Customized Features P. 290

⌘ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➤ Customized Features P. 290

Fog Lights*

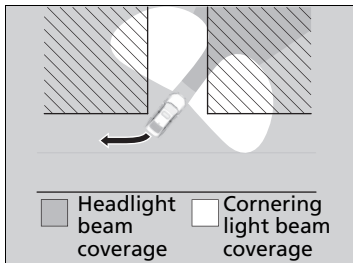
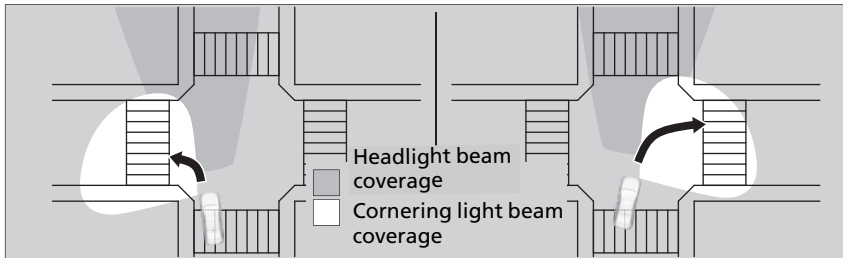
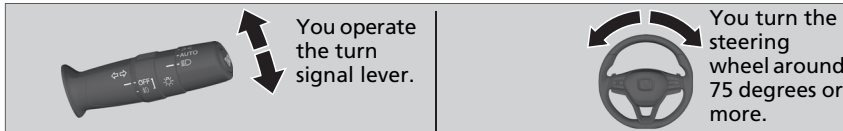


When the position lights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

Active Cornering Lights*

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 40 km/h, the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or the transmission is in **[R]**.

■ The corner you are making a turn towards is illuminated when:

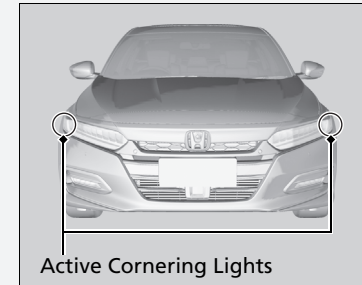


■ Both front corners are illuminated when:

The transmission is in **[R]**.

⚙️ Active Cornering Lights*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in **[R]**, select another position momentarily.



* Not available on all models

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is off, or in **AUTO**.

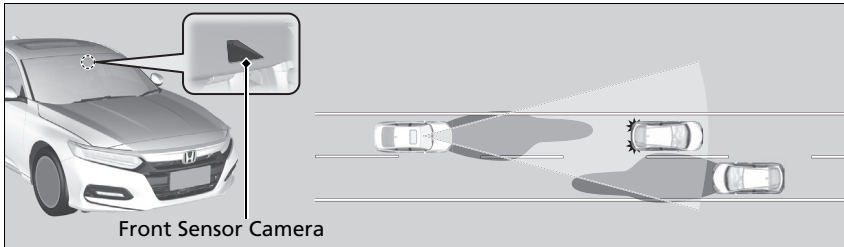
The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

» Daytime Running Lights

The position lights serve as daytime running lights.

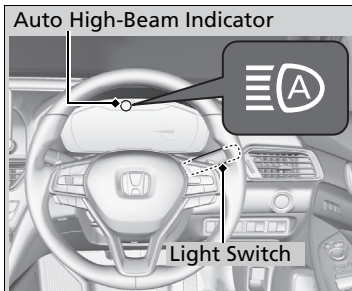
Auto High-Beam*

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.




How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

* Not available on all models

Auto High-Beam*

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 403

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

Continued

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

Switching to high beam:

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.



Switching to low beam:

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.


- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam


If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto highbeam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.
- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

►► How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

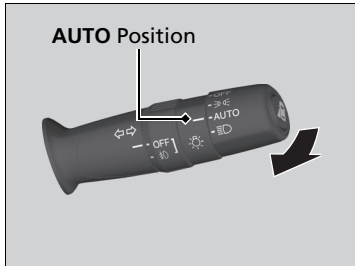
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

■ How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

You can turn the auto high-beam system off. If you want to turn the system off or on, set the power mode to ON, then carry out the following procedures while the vehicle is stationary.



To turn the system off:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks twice, release the lever.

To turn the system on:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks once, release the lever.

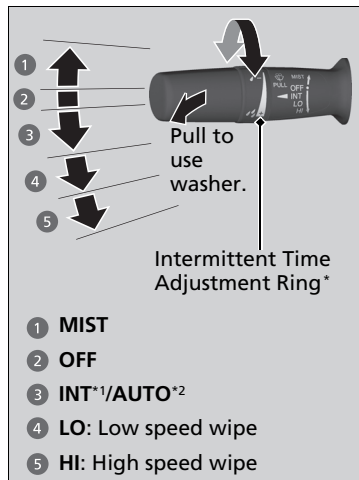
▣ How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

If you turn the auto high-beam system off, the system does not operate until you turn the system on.

Park in a safe place before turning the system off or on.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

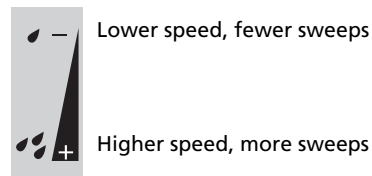
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*/AUTO*2, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

*1: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

*2: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

* Not available on all models

►► Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (⏸) and the LO setting become the same.

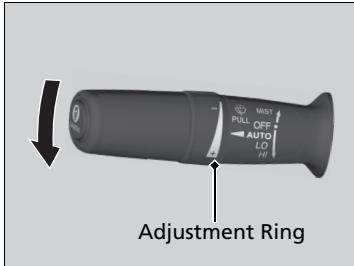
NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



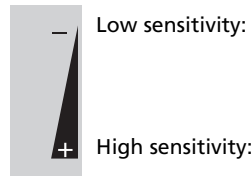
When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

Auto sensitivity adjustment

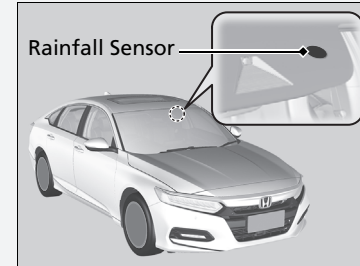
When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rain fall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity



Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



NOTICE

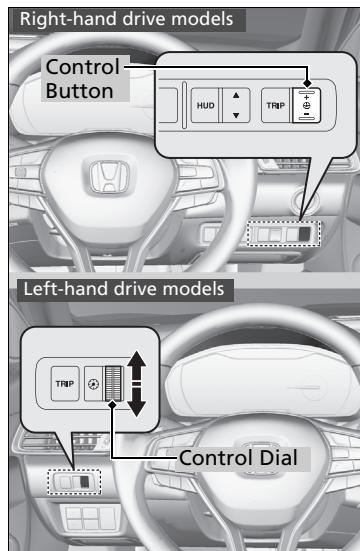
AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situation in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control

■ Adjusting the Instrument Panel Brightness



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control button*/dial* to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Right-hand drive models

Brighten: Press the button.

Dim: Press the button.

Left-hand drive models

Brighten: Turn the dial up.

Dim: Turn the dial down.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.



▶▶ Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in any position other than off and it is dark outside.

Right-hand drive models

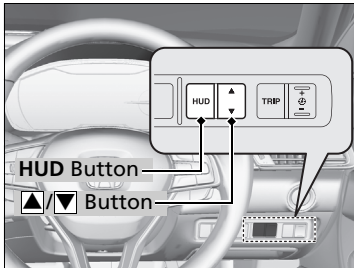
To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, press the button until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

Left-hand drive models

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the dial up until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

■ Adjusting the Head-Up Display Brightness*



When the head-up display is on, press and hold the **HUD** button until its brightness level indicator on the driver information interface.

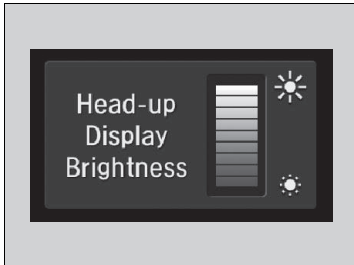
Brighten: Press the ▲ button.

Dim: Press the ▼ button.

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

■ Brightness level indicator

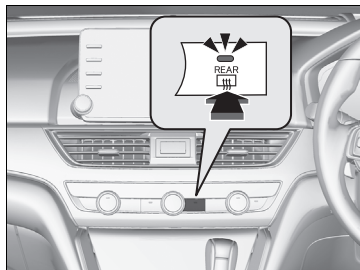
The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.



* Not available on all models

Rear Demister Button

Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.



The rear demister automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

⚡ Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demister. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat (except for power lumbar) position with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter, or keyless access system, the seat adjusts to the retracted position automatically.

The seat will move to one of the two preset positions automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY.

When you enter the vehicle, the driver information interface briefly shows you which remote transmitter you used to unlock the vehicle.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



The driver's seat moves rearward depending on the set seating position once you

- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the transmission into **P**.
- Turn the engine off.
- Then open the driver's door.

Once the power mode is in the ACCESSORY position, the driver's seat moves to the **DRIVER 1** or **2** preset position.

Driving Position Memory System*

Using the audio/information screen you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

► **Customized Features** P. 290

The driver's seat easy exit feature can be turned ON/OFF.

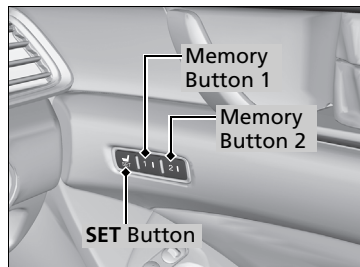
► **Customized Features** P. 290

System Operation

The system will not operate if:

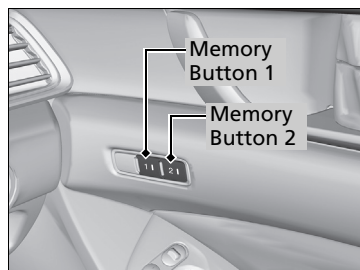
- The vehicle speed is above 3 km/h.
- Either memory position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- The memory 1 or 2 position is set fully to the rear.

■ Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
 - You will hear the beeper, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press the memory button **1** or **2** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
 - Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on and you will hear two beeps.

■ Recalling the Stored Position



1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (**1** or **2**).
 - You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear the beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

►► Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be cancelled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

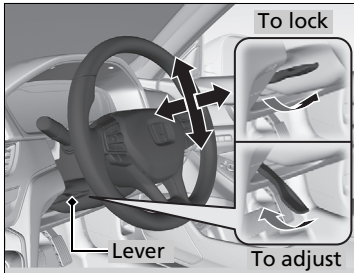
►► Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if:

- The vehicle speed is above 3 km/h.
- You press the **SET** button, or a memory button (**1** or **2**).
- You adjust the seat position.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
 - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

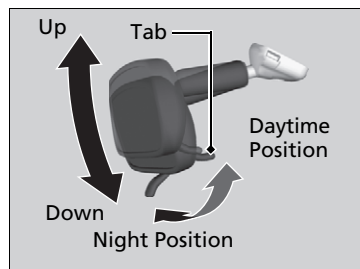
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

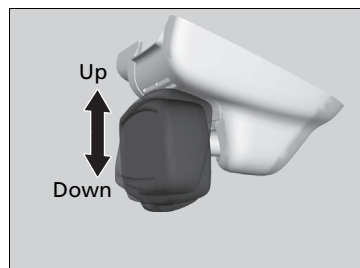
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

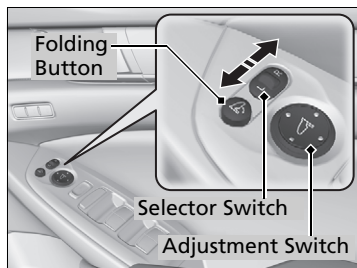
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

Adjusting the Seats P. 197

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

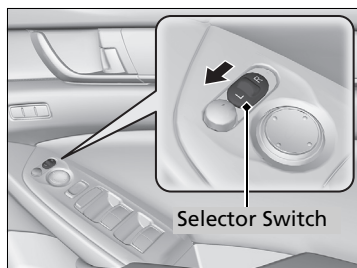
L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



If activated, passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission in **R**; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when reversing. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you transmission out of **R**.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON, and slide the selector switch to the passenger side.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function *

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

- The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors using the remote transmitter or keyless access system. Open the driver's door.

- The mirrors start folding out automatically.

⌘ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function *

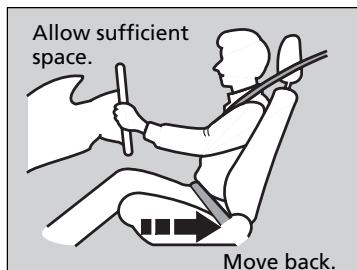
You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

⌘ **Customized Features** P. 290

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seats

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

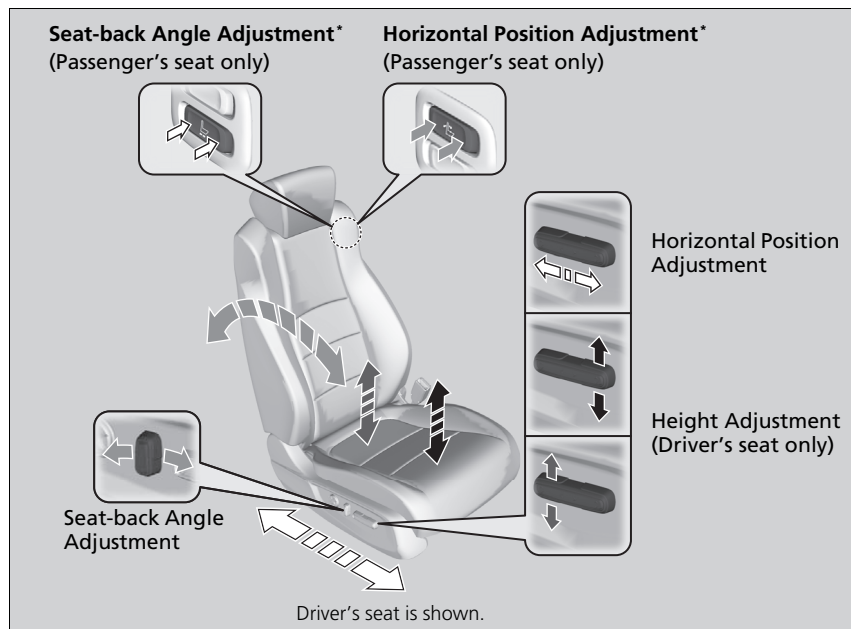
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

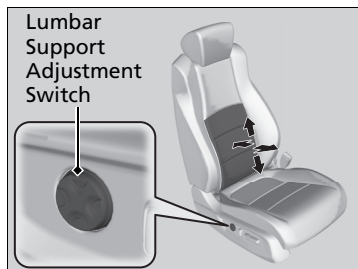
In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seats





■ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

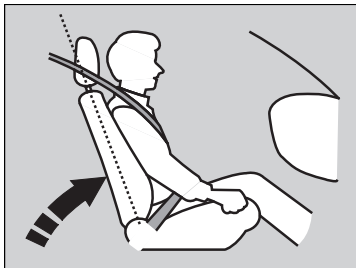
Press the top: To move the lumbar support up.

Press the bottom: To move the lumbar support down.

Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

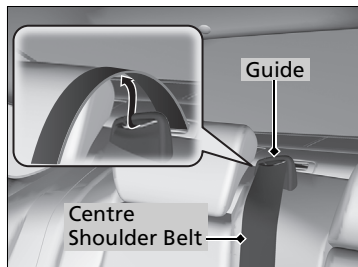
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

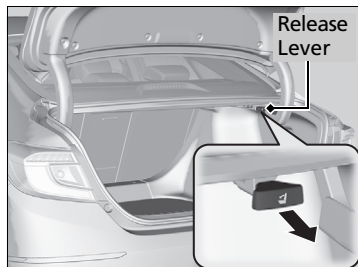
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

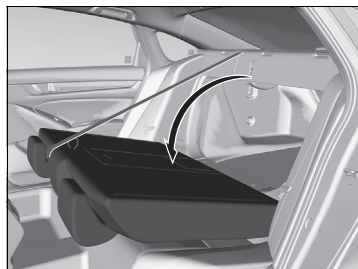
Folding Down the Rear Seat



1. Remove the centre shoulder belt from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

Folding Down the Rear Seat

The rear seat-back can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 83

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide.

Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seat(s) is properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

WARNING

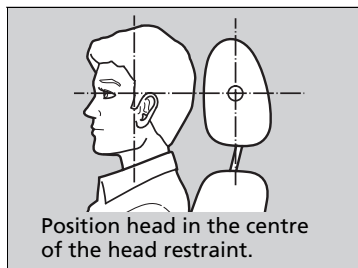
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

⌘ Head Restraints

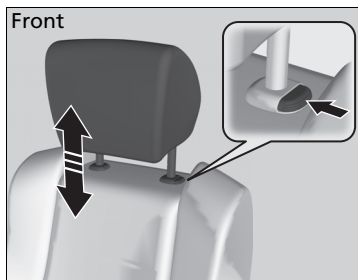
⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

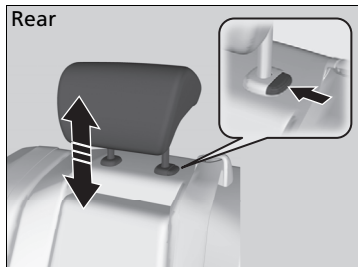
In order for the head restraint system to work properly.

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.



To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.



■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove the head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall the head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

✕ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

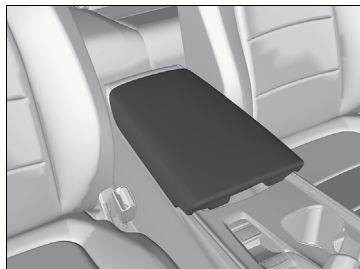
⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

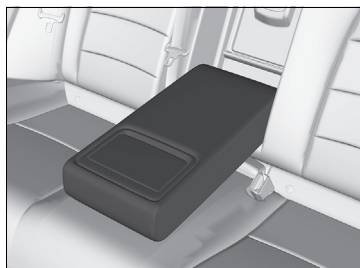
Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

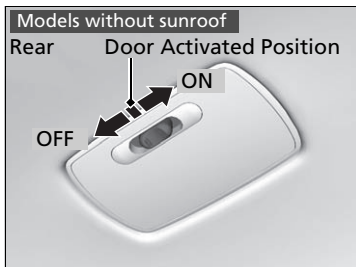
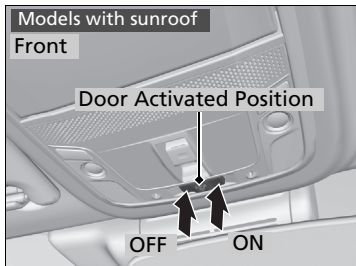
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 290

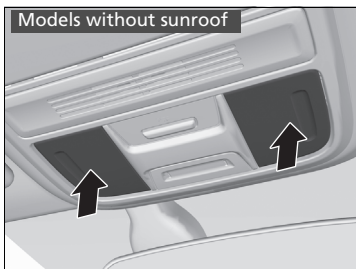
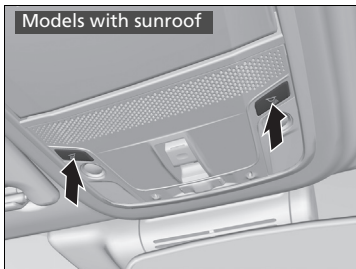
The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.


To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

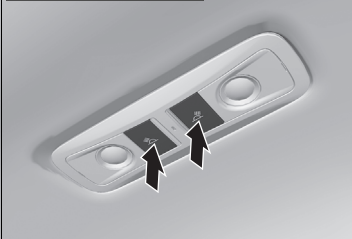
■ Map Lights



■ Front

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) buttons* or the lenses*.


Models with sunroof



Models without sunroof



■ Rear

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) buttons* or the lenses*.

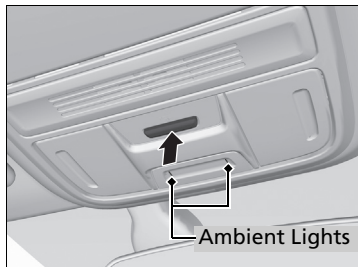
» Map Lights

Models with sunroof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the rear map lights will not go off when you press the button.

* Not available on all models

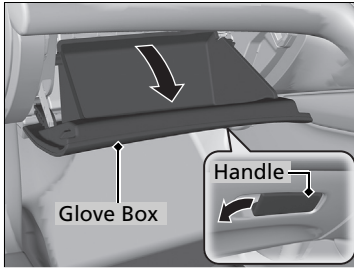
■ Ambient Lights (on front roof)*



When the position lights are on, push the ambient light switch to turn the ambient lights on.

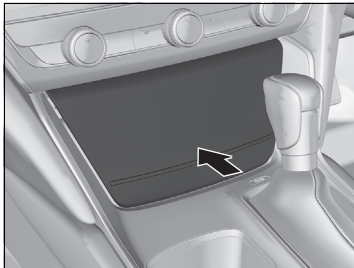
Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Centre Pocket



Push the cover to open the pocket.

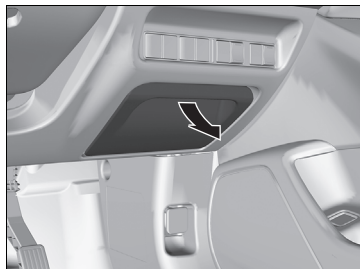
Glove Box

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Driver's Side Pocket



Pull the handle to open the pocket.

■ Console Compartment



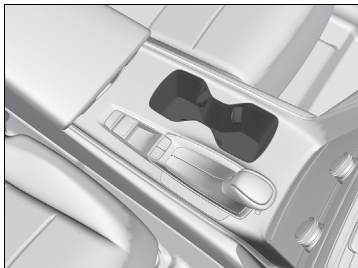
Pull the handle to open the console compartment.



■ Removable tray

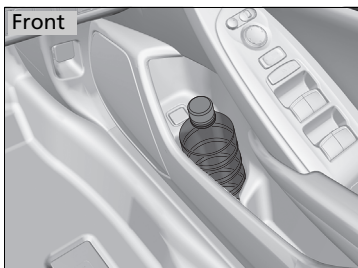
The tray in the console compartment is detachable. To remove the tray, simply pull it up.

■ Beverage Holders

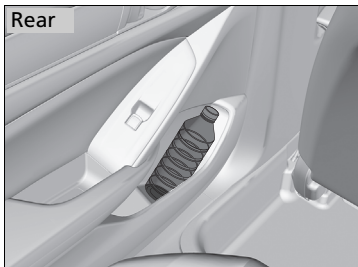


■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



Front



Rear

■ Door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front and rear door side pockets.

►► Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



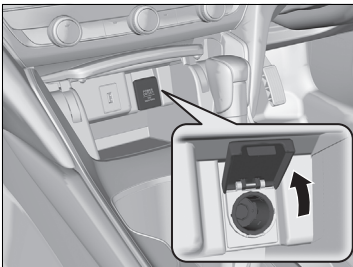
■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down and pull up on the lid to use the rear seat beverage holders.

When you put back the armrest in the rear centre seatback, make sure the lid is closed properly.

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Accessory power socket (centre pocket)

Open the centre pocket and the cover to use it.

»» Accessory Power Socket


NOTICE

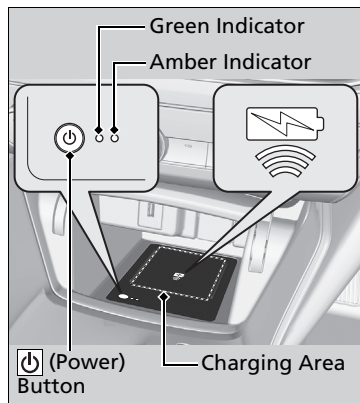
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.


The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
 - When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
 - The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
 - Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
 - Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

►► Wireless Charger*

⚠ CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.


- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the centre of the charging area where  is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

* Not available on all models


Continued

Wireless Charger*

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

“Qi” and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

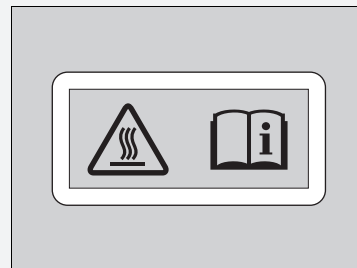
During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All the doors or the boot are closed
- to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

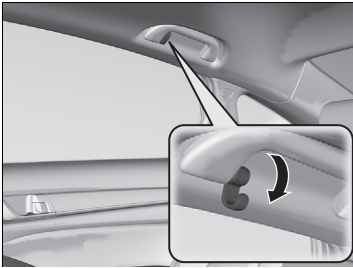
►► Wireless Charger*



Burn risk:

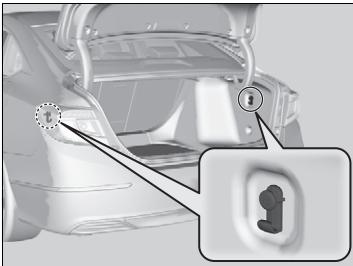
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

■ Coat Hook



There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

■ Luggage Hooks



The luggage hooks in the boot can be used to install a net for securing items.

▣ Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

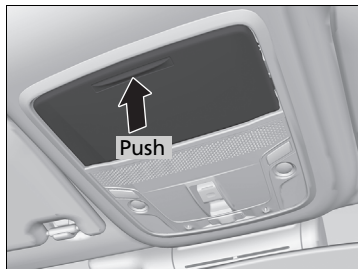
▣ Luggage Hooks

Heavy objects may damage the hook. Make sure any items put on this hook weigh less than 3 kg.

Distribute luggage evenly on the floor of the boot, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.

▣ **Load Limit** P. 329

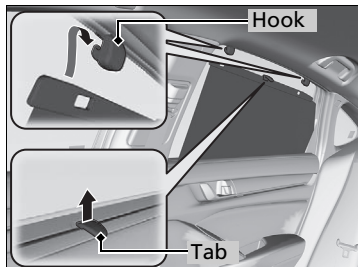
■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

■ Integrated Sunshades*



Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Use the hooks to hang it.

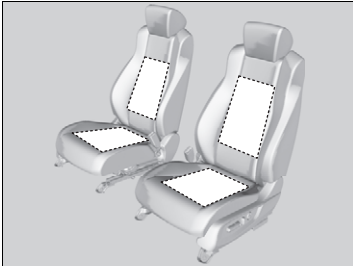
» Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

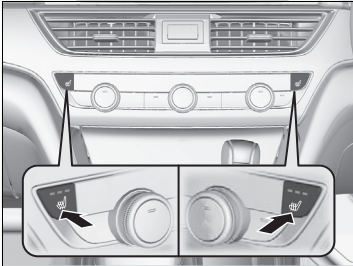
» Integrated Sunshades*

Use the sunshades only when the windows are fully closed. Using the shade while a window is open can unhook and blow off the shade, hitting and hurting anyone sitting near the window.

Front Seat Heaters*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.



Press the seat heater button:

- Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
- Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
- Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
- Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting of front seat heaters is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters*

⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

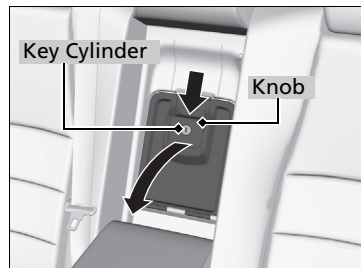
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the front seat heaters shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

* Not available on all models

■ Boot Pass-through Cover

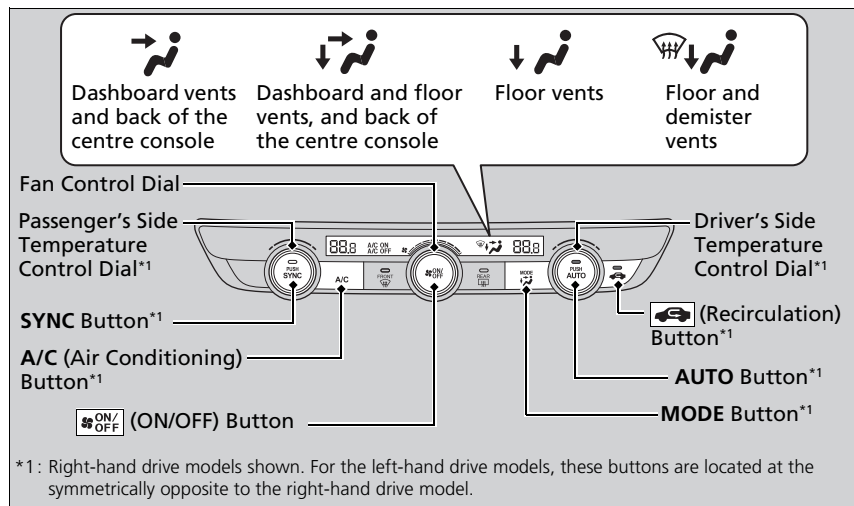


Slide down the knob to open the cover. You have access to the boot from this opening in the rear seat-back. The cover latches when you push it back to the original position.

You can lock and unlock this cover using the built-in key.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority. The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.


If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

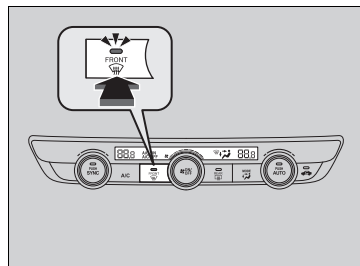
■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes


Press the  (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.


Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

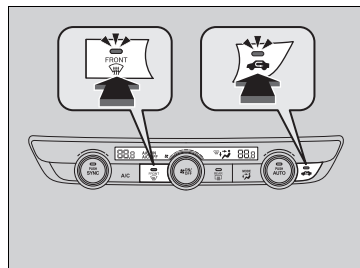
■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Press the  button to turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

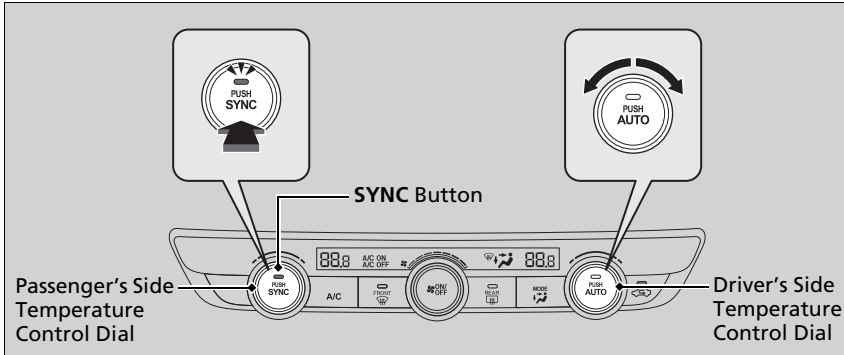
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Synchronization Mode




You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver side and the passenger side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
► The system will switch to the synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using driver's side temperature control dial.

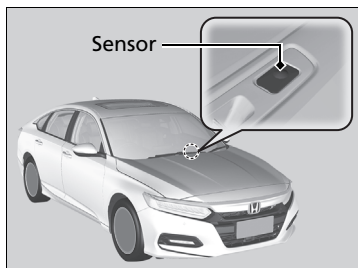
Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.

Synchronization Mode

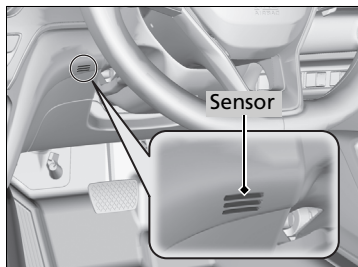
When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver side temperature and the passenger side temperature can be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System

About Your Audio System	228
USB Ports	229
Audio System Theft Protection*	231
Audio Remote Controls	232

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen	237
Adjusting the Sound	249
Display Setup	250
Playing AM/FM Radio	252
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*	255

Playing an iPod	258
Playing a USB Flash Drive	261
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio	264
Smartphone Connection	266
Wi-Fi Connection	269
Siri Eyes Free	271
Apple CarPlay	272
Android Auto	275

Audio Error Messages

General Information on the Audio

System	281
Customized Features	290

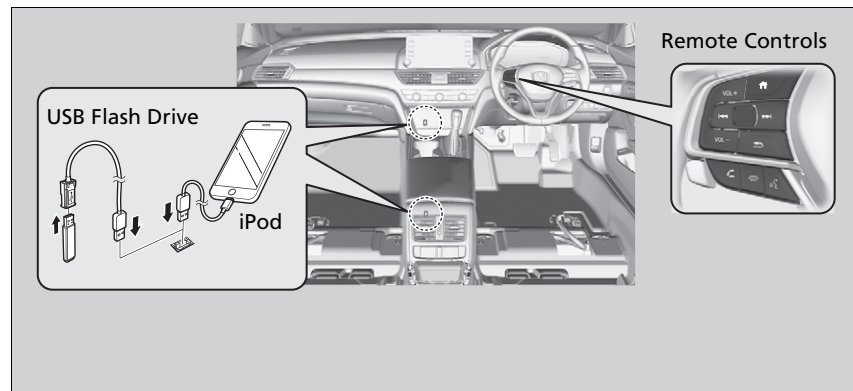
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System ...

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

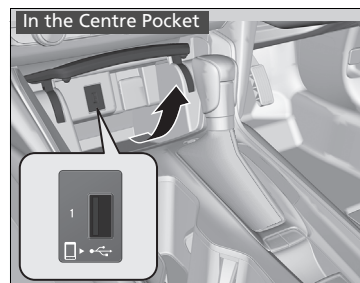


About Your Audio System

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

USB Ports

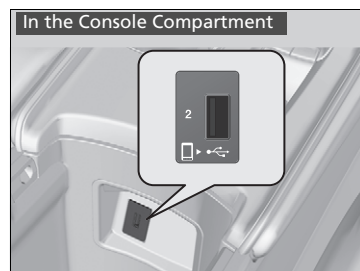
Install the device USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.



■ In the Centre Pocket

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

- ▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.



■ In the console compartment

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

⌘ USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

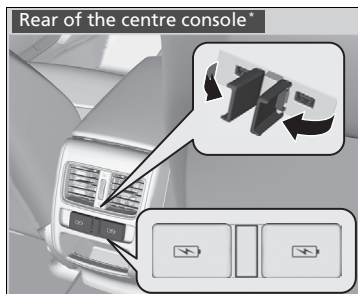
USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless the device requests.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.



■ **Rear of the centre console***

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

Audio System Theft Protection*

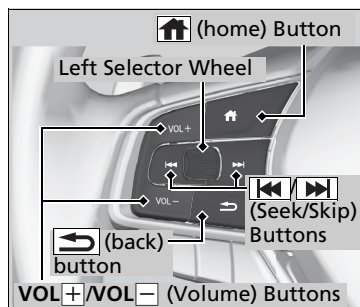
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power knob for more than two seconds.
 - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface or head-up display*.



VOL+/VOL- (Volume) Buttons

Press VOL+: To increase the volume.

Press VOL-: To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode
Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

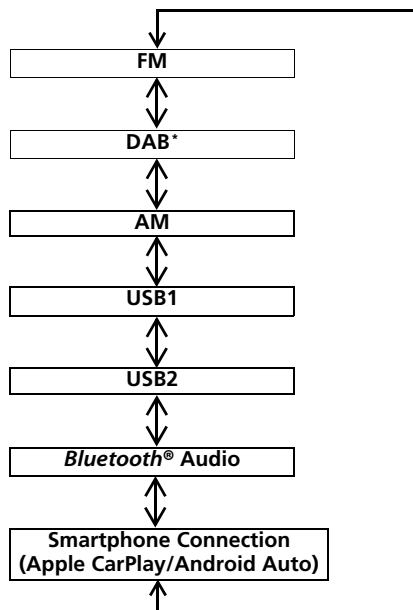
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

Press the (back) button for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Roll up or down:

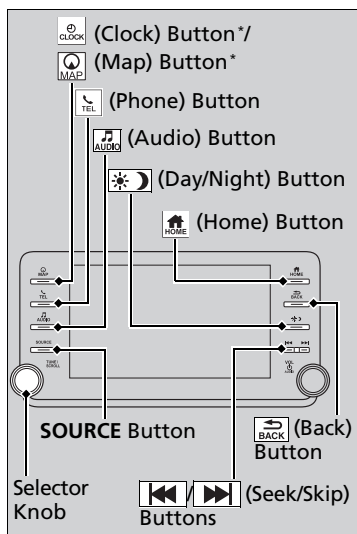
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:



◀◀/▶▶ (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press** ▶▶: To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press** ◀◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold** ▶▶: To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold** ◀◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to the DAB*
 - Press** ▶▶: To select the next preset service.
 - Press** ◀◀: To select the previous preset service.
 - Press and hold** ▶▶: To select the next ensemble.
 - Press and hold** ◀◀: To select the previous ensemble.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
 - Press** ▶▶: To skip to the next song.
 - Press** ◀◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
 - Press and hold** ▶▶: To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold** ◀◀: To go back to the previous folder.

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



(Home) Button: Press to go to the home screen.

Switching the Display P. 237

(Back) Button: Press to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

(Seek/Skip) Buttons: Press to change songs.

(Clock) Button*: Press to display the clock screen.

(Map) Button*: Press to display the map screen.

(Phone) Button: Press to display the phone screen.

(Audio) Button: Press to display the current audio information.

SOURCE Button: Press to display the source select screen.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the Selector Knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

Selector Knob


When the list is not displayed, songs, frequency, etc. can be changed.


While connected to Apple CarPlay, it changes as follows:




- Pressing the Phone Button, display the Apple CarPlay phone screen.
- Pressing the Audio Button, display the Apple CarPlay audio screen.




Selector Knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices.

Press  to set your selection.

 **(Day/Night) Button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press  once and select  or  to make an adjustment.

- Each time you press , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.


Audio/Information Screen


Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display

Using the audio/information screen



Press the  button to go to the home screen.

Select the following icons on the home screen or after selecting  **All Apps**.

Phone

Displays the HFT information.

 **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System** P. 309

Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

 **Customized Features** P. 290

■ Trip Computer

Displays the trip computer information.

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **Trip A/Trip B** tab: Displays information for the current and three previous drives.

The information is stored every time you reset Trip A/B.

To reset the Trip A/B, select **Settings**, then select **Delete Trip History**.

To change the setting of how to reset Trip A/B, select **Settings**, then select **“Trip A” Reset Timing** or **“Trip B” Reset Timing**.

■ Clock

Displays the clock.

■ FM/AM/DAB*/USB1/USB2/Bluetooth Audio/Smartphone Connection

Displays the audio information for each.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 290

■ Navigation*

Displays the navigation screen.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

Displays the **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto** screen.

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 272

➤ **Android Auto** P. 275

■ **Compass***

Displays the compass screen.

■ **TA***

Turns on and off the traffic information.

■ **Camera***

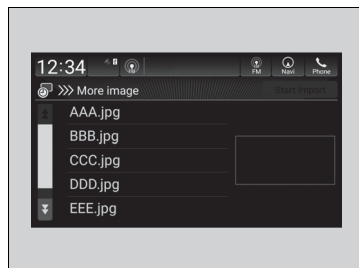
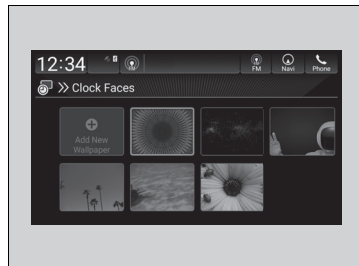
Displays the multi-view camera system screen.

📺 **Multi-View Camera System*** P. 429

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port in the centre pocket or console compartment.

▶ **USB Ports** P. 229

2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Add New Wallpaper**.
 - ▶ The **Searching...** screen is displayed.
6. Import a desired picture.
 - ▶ Multiple pictures can be imported at the same time.
7. Select **Start Import**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock Faces** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- Up to five pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 × 936 pixels. If the image size is less the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
5. Select **Set**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Clock**.

■ Delete wallpaper

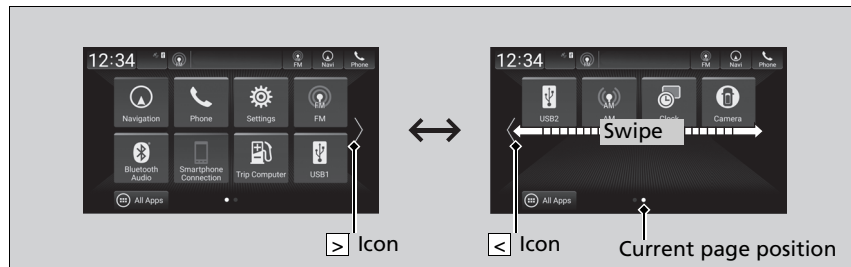
1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. Select **Yes**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

Wallpaper Setup

You cannot delete the initially imported wallpapers.

■ Home Screen

■ To change to a next screen



Selecting or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

▶▶ Home Screen


The home screen has 2 pages. You can add up to 7 pages.

Press the button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add app icons on the home screen


App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold the home screen.
3. Select **Add**.
4. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
5. Select **Done**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

▶▶ To add app icons on the home screen

You can add app icons by the following procedure.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Customise**.
4. Select **Add**.
5. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
6. Select **Done**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 308

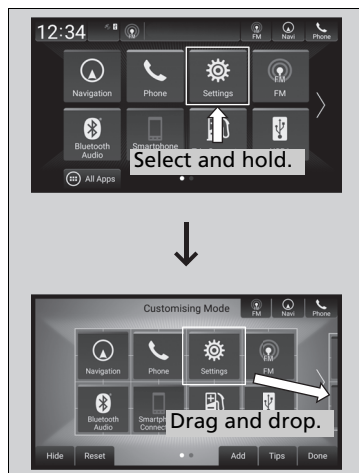
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 308

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



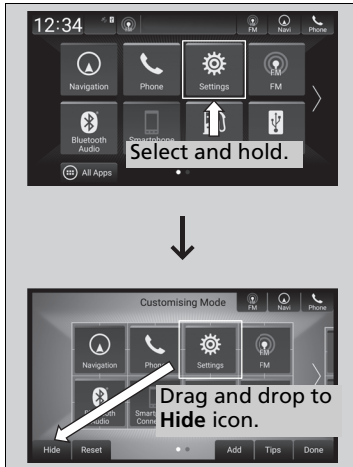
1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **Done**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the **Hide** icon.
 - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **Done**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

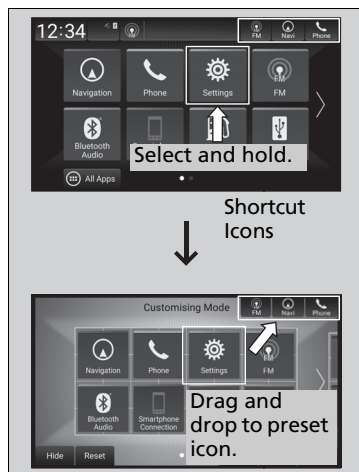
▶▶ To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to three icons on the upper left of the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the upper right*¹ or left*² of the home screen.
 - ▶ The icon is shortcut.
3. Select **Done**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

▶▶ To shortcut icons on the home screen


Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

*1: Right-hand drive models

*2: Left-hand drive models

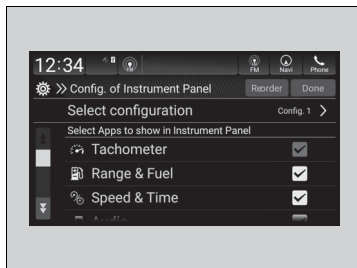
Status Area




1. Select the system status icon.
▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the  button or select the system status icon to close the area.

■ Customizing the Meter

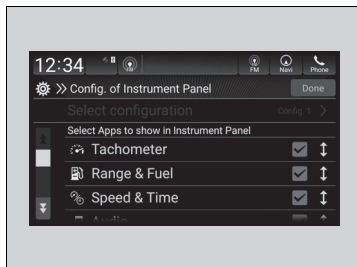
You can edit, show, or hide the meter contents on the driver information interface.




1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Config. of Instrument Panel**.
5. Select the content you wish to show or hide.
 - The checked items are displayed on the driver information interface.
6. Select **Done**.

■ Editing order

To change the order of the contents on the driver information interface, first select:

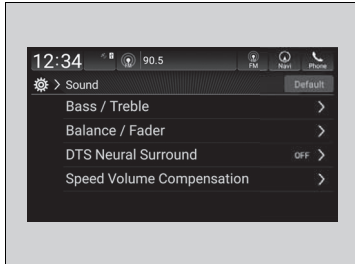
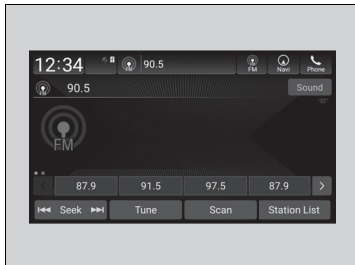



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Config. of Instrument Panel**.
5. Select **Reorder**.
6. Select and hold the contents you want to move.
7. Drag and drop the contents to where you want it to be.
8. Select **Done**.

►► Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, select **Select configuration**.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the  button.
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select **Sound**.
4. Select the setting you want.
5. Select **Save**.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble**: Treble, Midrange, Bass, Subwoofer*
- **Balance / Fader**: Balance, Fader
- **DTS Neural Surround***: DTS Neural Surround™
- **Speed Volume Compensation**: Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

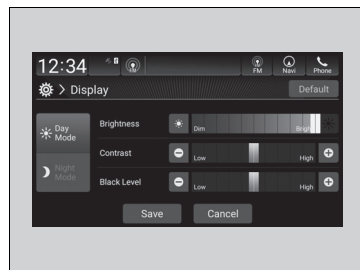
To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, **DTS Neural Surround*** and **Speed Volume Compensation**, select **Default**.


* Not available on all models

Display Setup

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness



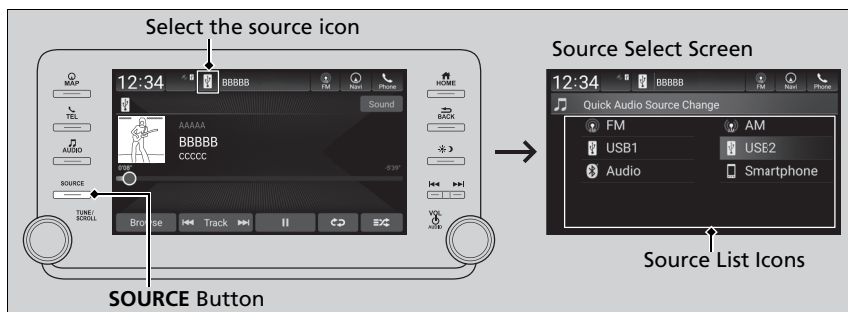
1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Day Mode** or **Night Mode**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **Save**.

▶▶ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

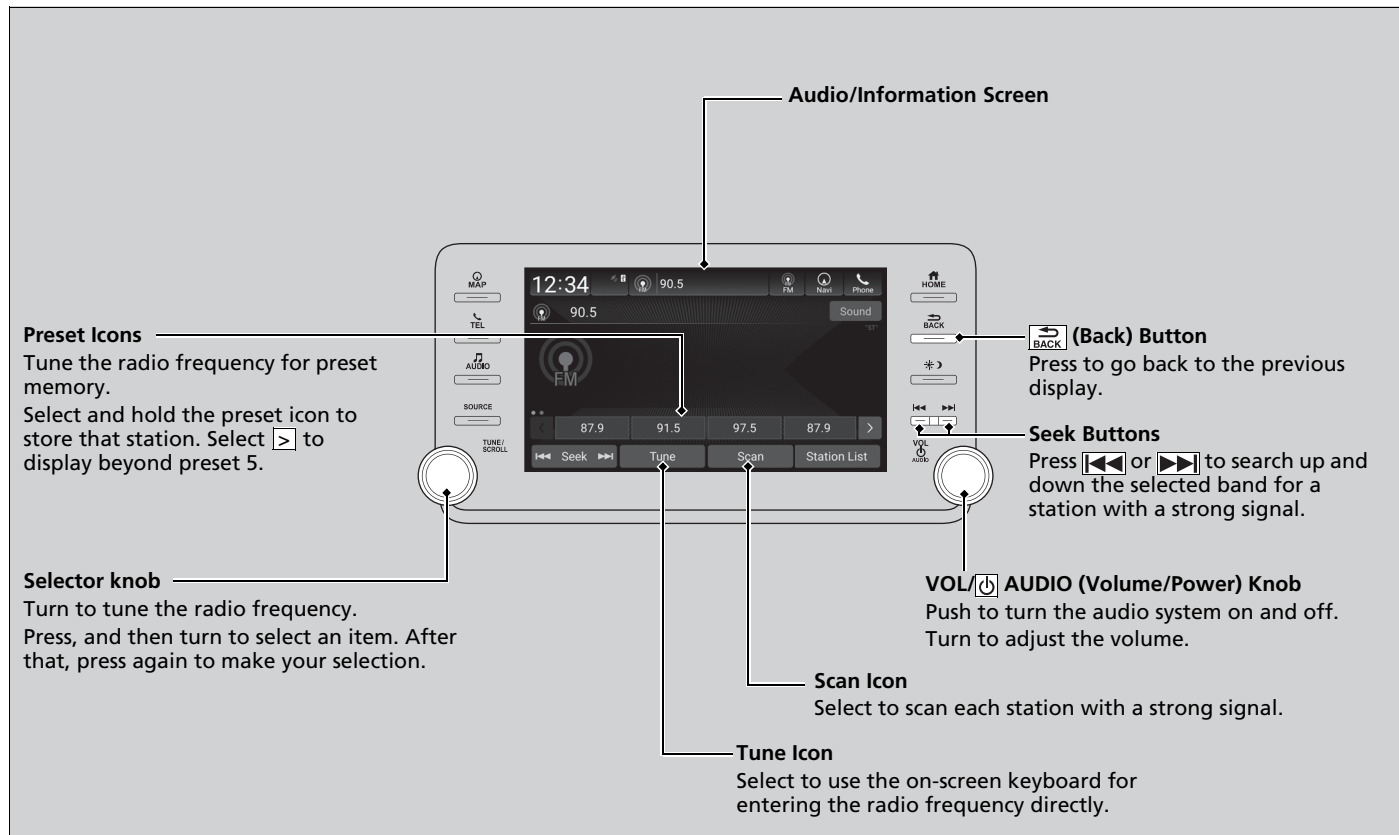
To reset the settings, select **Default**.

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon or press the **SOURCE** button, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

Playing AM/FM Radio



■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon for the station you want to store.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

⌘ Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.


Switching the Audio Mode

Roll the left selector wheel or select the audio source icon on the screen.

➤ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 232

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or .

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

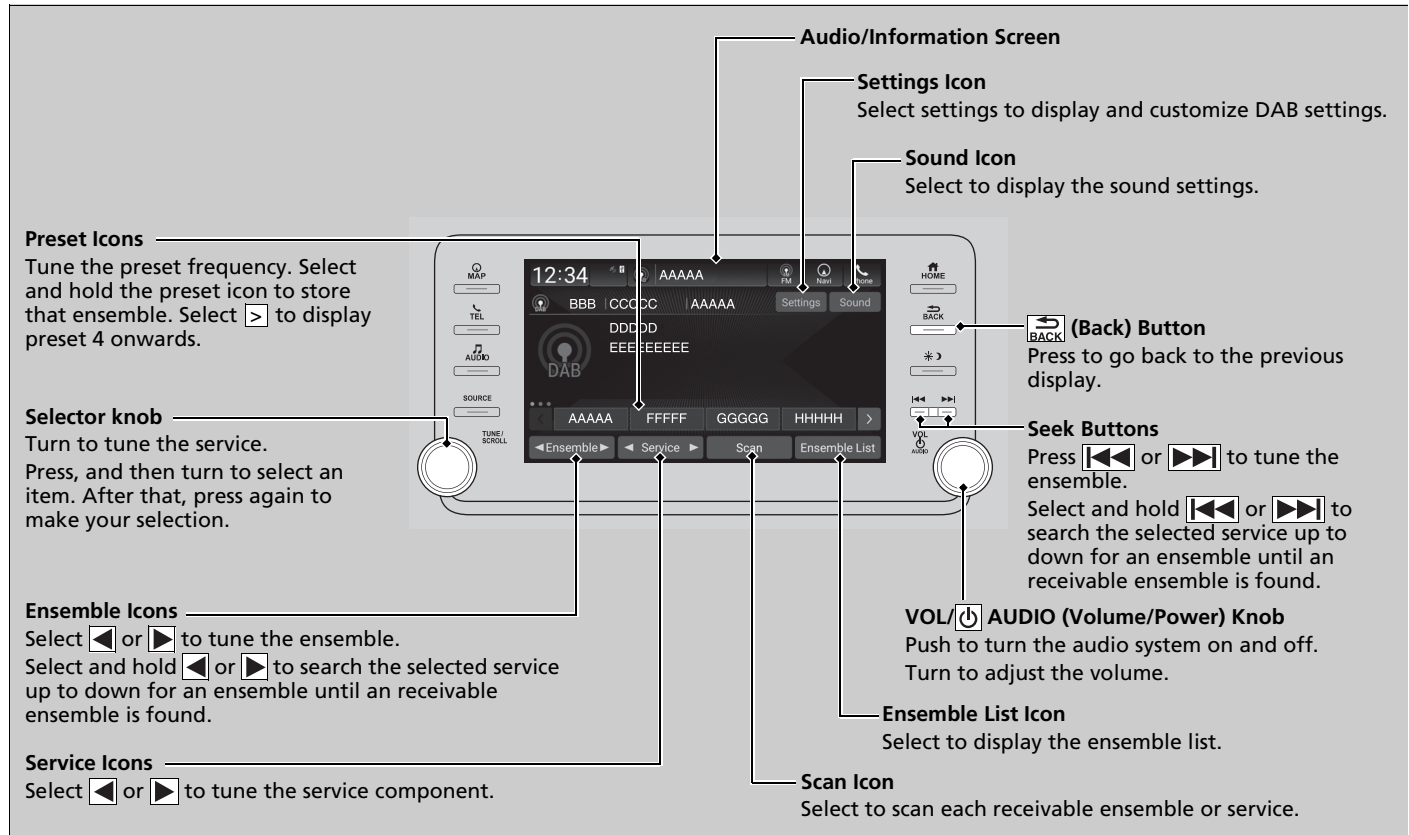
■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

⌘ Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



■ Preset Memory

To store a service:

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable service on the selected ensembles.

1. Select the **Ensemble List**.
2. Select the ensemble.

■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

1. Select the **Ensemble List**.
2. Select **Refresh**.

▶▶ Preset Memory


Switching the Audio Mode

Roll the left selector wheel or select the audio source icon on the screen.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 232

You can store 12 ensembles into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or .

■ Change scan mode

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Scan Mode**.
3. Select **Ensemble** or **All**.

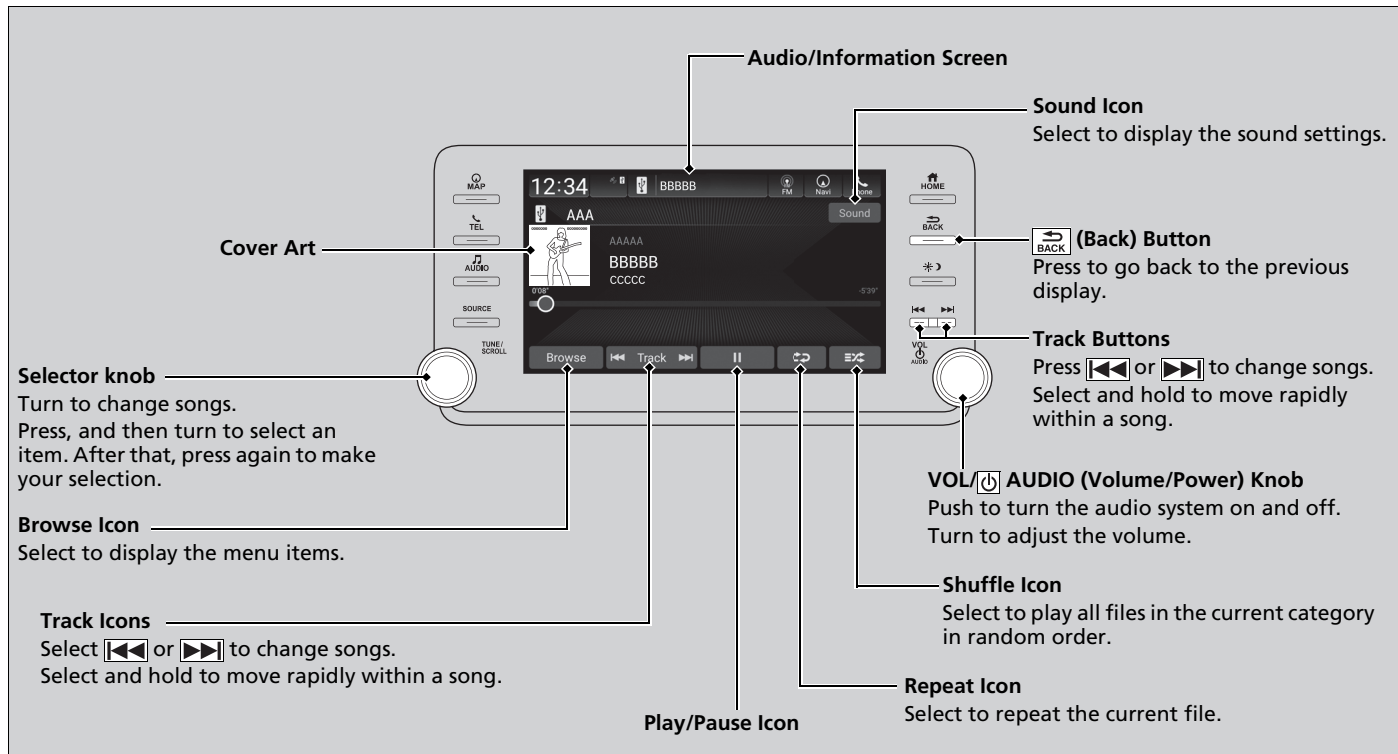
■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

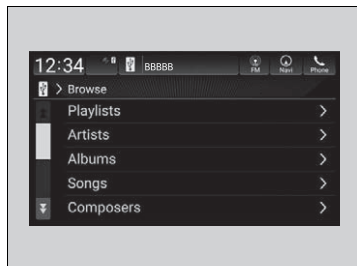
Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB ports, then select the USB mode.

► **USB Ports** P. 229



How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

▶▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

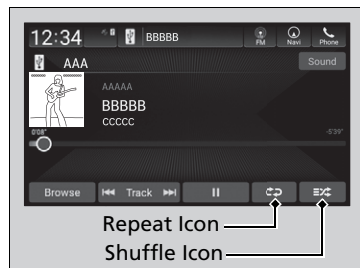
▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 279

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.



■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.



■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.




▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle

-  **Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.
-  **Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Repeat

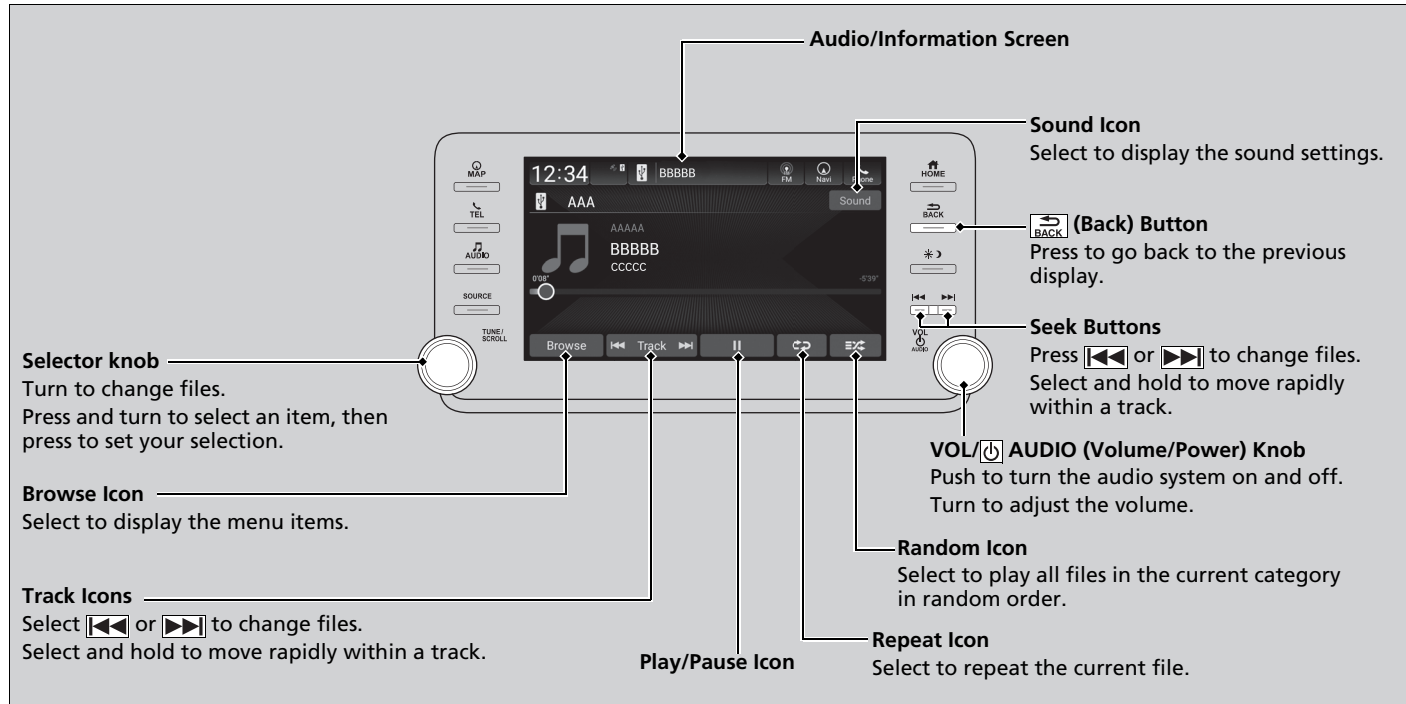
-  **Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.
-  **Repeat Song:** Repeats the current song.
-  **Repeat all:** Repeats the all songs.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays audio files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, MP4A, AAC, FLAC, WAV, MP4, or AVI format.

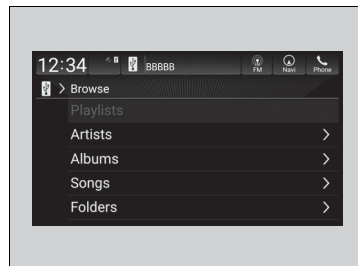
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB ports, then select the USB mode.

🔌 **USB Ports** P. 229



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select **Music** or **Video**.
3. Continue making selections until you find the song or video of your choice.

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 281

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

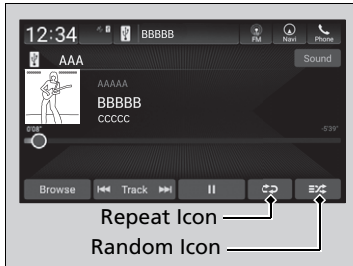
The audio system displays **The selected file cannot be played**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 279

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.



Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Random

Random off: Random mode to off.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

Repeat off: Repeat mode to off.

Repeat track: Repeats the current folder.

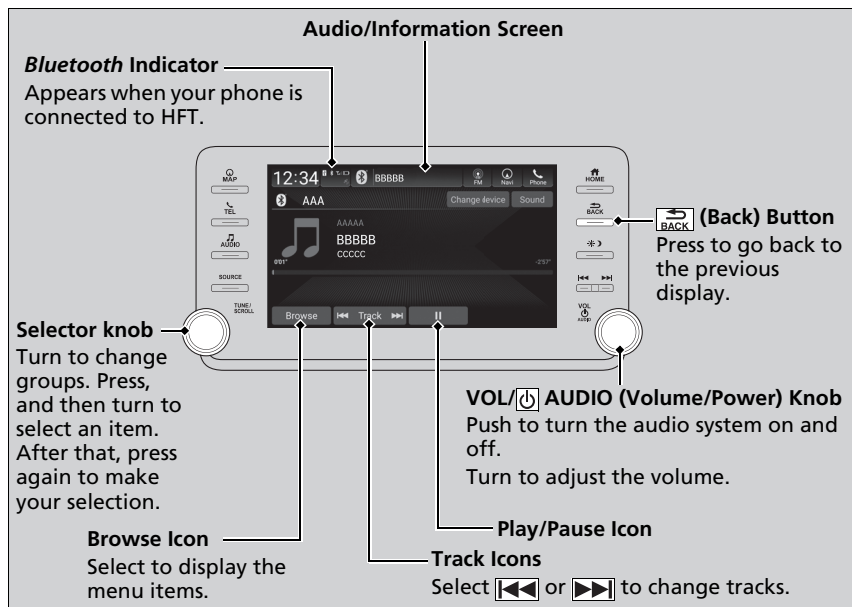
Repeat all: Repeats the all songs.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 314



▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

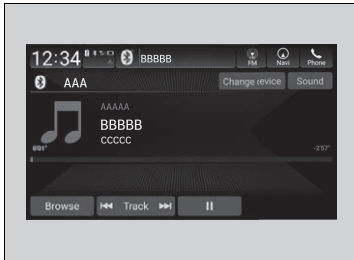
In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, you can have a second previously paired phone stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 314

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 314

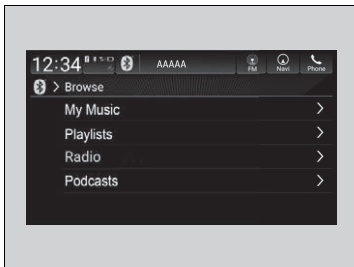
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

Searching for Music



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
3. Select an item.
 - ▶ The selection begins playing.

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change device**.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 314

▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable, or wirelessly.

🔗 **Connecting Your Smartphone** P. 268

🔗 **Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)** P. 269

Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

🔗 **To change the currently paired phone**
P. 316

The following may vary by phone type:

- Connection method.
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time.

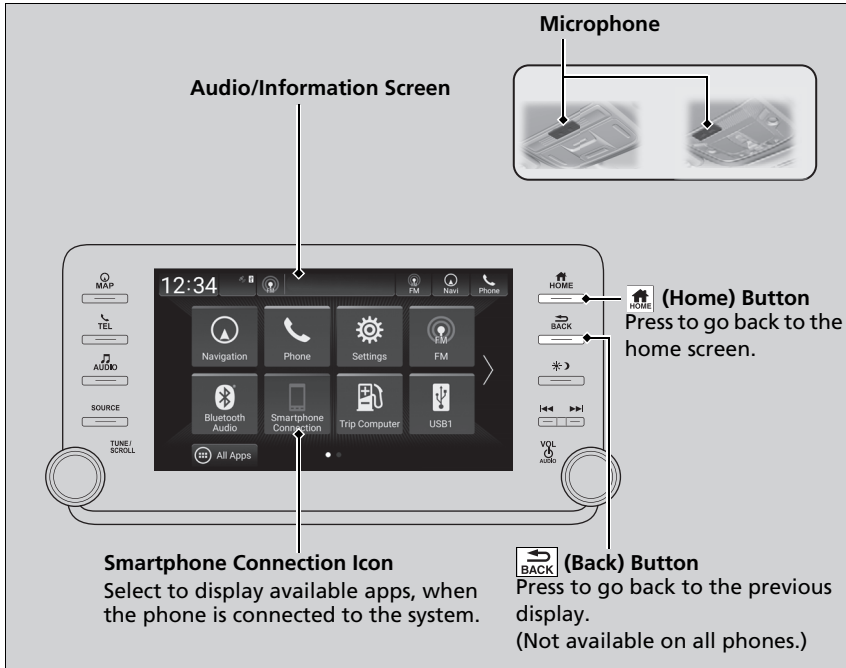
We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

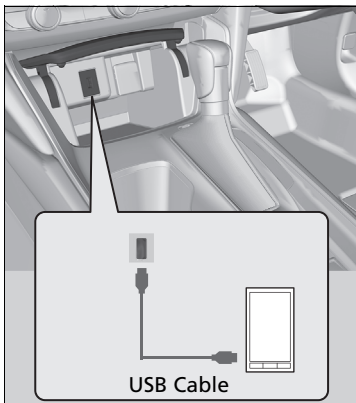
To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth®*.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 314



Except iPhone

■ Connecting Your Smartphone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 314

2. Plug in your phone to the USB port.
 - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection** to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, press the **BACK** button.

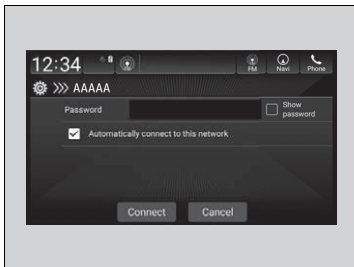
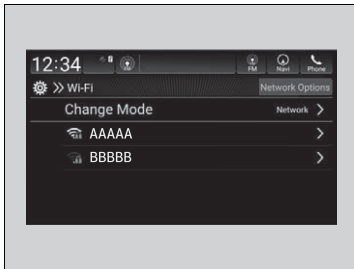
✕ Connecting Your Smartphone




The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB port. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the audio system to the Internet using Wi-Fi on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **Change Mode**.
6. Select **Network** or **Hotspot**, then **Confirm**.
 - ▶ To change the Wi-Fi settings, select **Network Options** or **Hotspot Options**.
 - ▶ Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
7. Select **Connect**.
 - ▶ Enter a password for the access point, and select **Done**.
 - ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the list.
8. Press the  button to go back to the home screen.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.




Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)


Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

▶▶ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

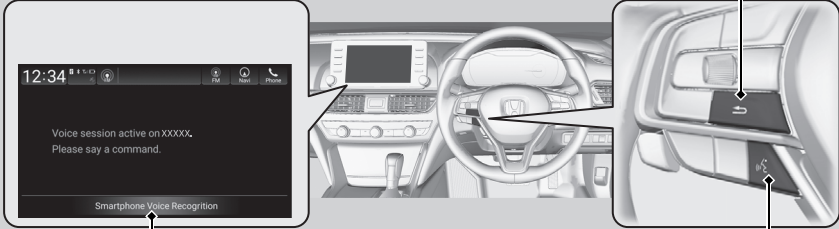
You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.


Siri Eyes Free


You can talk to Siri using to press and hold the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 **Phone Setup** P. 314

■ Using Siri Eyes Free



 **(Back) Button**
Press to deactivate Siri.


 **(Talk) Button**
Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

While in Siri Eyes Free:
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.

▶▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

While driving we recommend only using Siri through the  button on the steering wheel (Siri Eyes Free).

▶▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

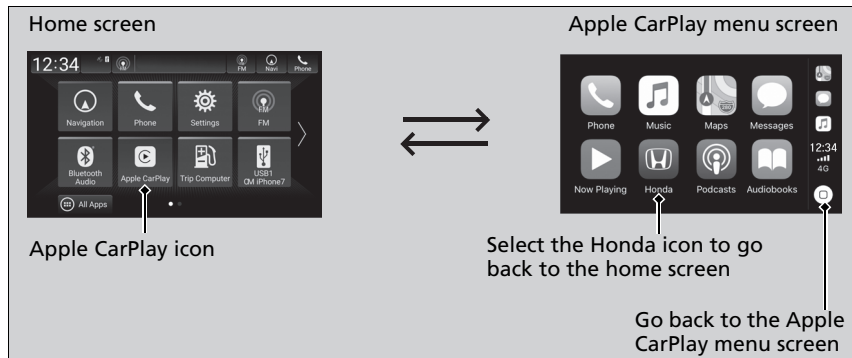
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port in the centre pocket or console compartment, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

🔧 **USB Ports** P. 229

Apple CarPlay Menu



■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

▶▶ Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the USB port located in the centre pocket or console compartment.

The USB ports located on the rear of the centre console* are used only for charging.

🔧 **USB Ports** P. 229

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

🔧 **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 273

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Apple CarPlay is connected.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 314

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

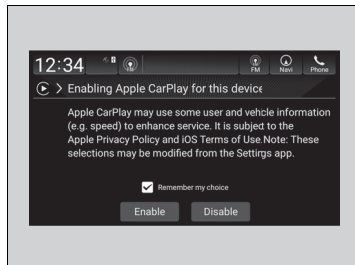
Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the front USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



Check the checkbox.

Enable: Allows this consent.

Disable: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

▶▶ Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

▶▶ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

Select HOME → Settings → Connections → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device → Edit Device Permissions

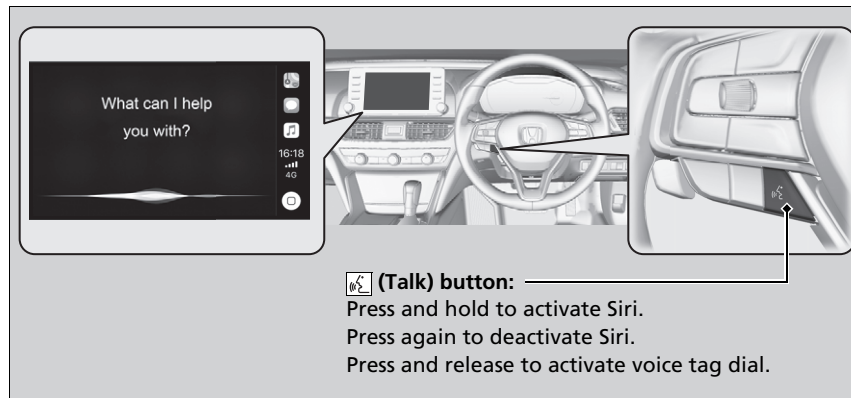
Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the talk button to activate Siri.



►► Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit
www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the front USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

🔌 **USB Ports** P. 229

🔌 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 277

NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB ports located in the centre pocket or the console compartment. The USB ports located on the rear of the centre console* will not enable Android Auto operation.

🔌 **USB Ports** P. 229

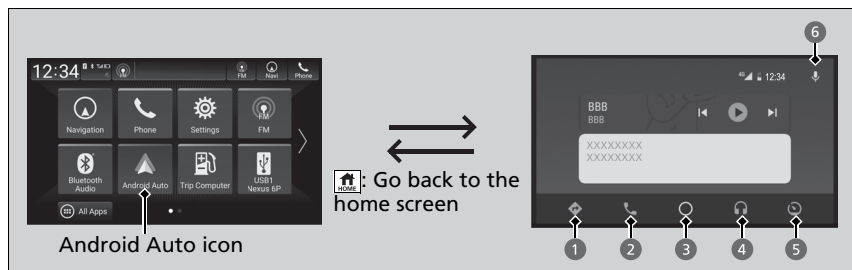
To directly access the Android Auto phone function, press **Phone** on the home screen.

🔌 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 277

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Android Auto is connected.

🔌 **Phone Setup** P. 314

Android Auto Menu



1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

2 Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

3 Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

4 Music and audio

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto.

To switch between music apps, press this icon.

5 Go back to the Home Screen.

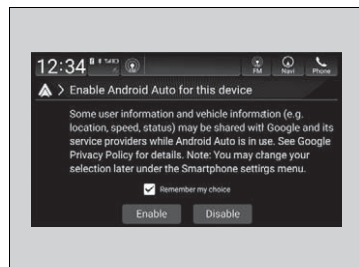
6 Voice

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the front USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto



Check the checkbox.

Enable: Allows this consent.

Disable: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

▶▶ Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

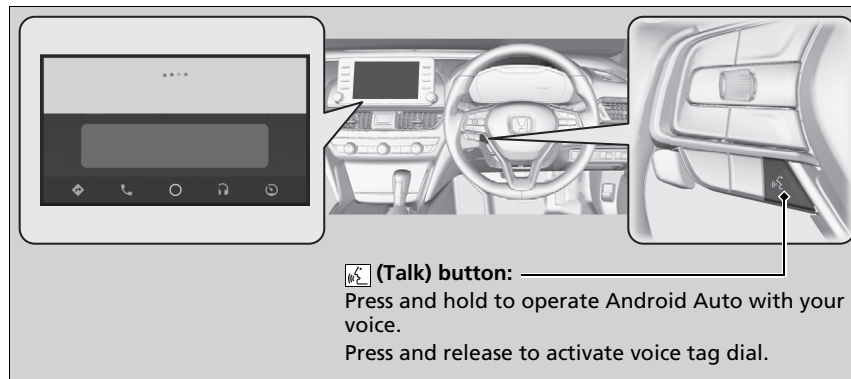
Select HOME → Settings → Connections → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device → Edit Device Permissions

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the talk button to operate Android Auto with your voice.




▶▶ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.


iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB error	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data	<div>iPod</div> Appears when the iPod is empty. <div>USB flash drive</div> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty. <div>iPod and USB flash drive</div> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device. Appears when unsupported formats are in the device. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Device No Response	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Unfortunately, *** has stopped.*1	Error has occurred within app, select OK on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it? *1	App is not responding. Select Wait if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select OK to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform Factory Data Reset .  Defaulting All the Settings P. 308

*1:****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod, and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/ iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, MP4, or AVI formats may be unsupported.

iPod, and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.


DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **About**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **Licence**.

Licence Information

■ DOLBY DIGITAL

Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Audio, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



■ DTS*

For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under licence from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, DTS-HD, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc. ©DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by PANASONIC CORPORATION is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a licence from Microsoft.

■ Apple

“Made for iPod,” and “Made for iPhone,” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



■ MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

AVC/H.264

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

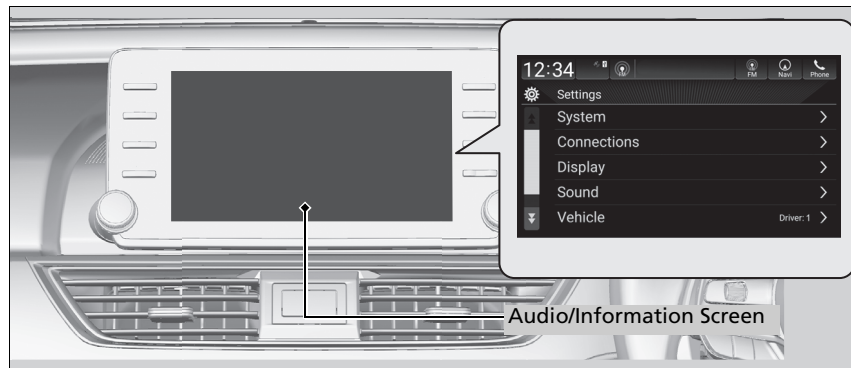
■ SDHC Memory Card

microSDHC Logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

With the power mode in ON, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



» Customized Features

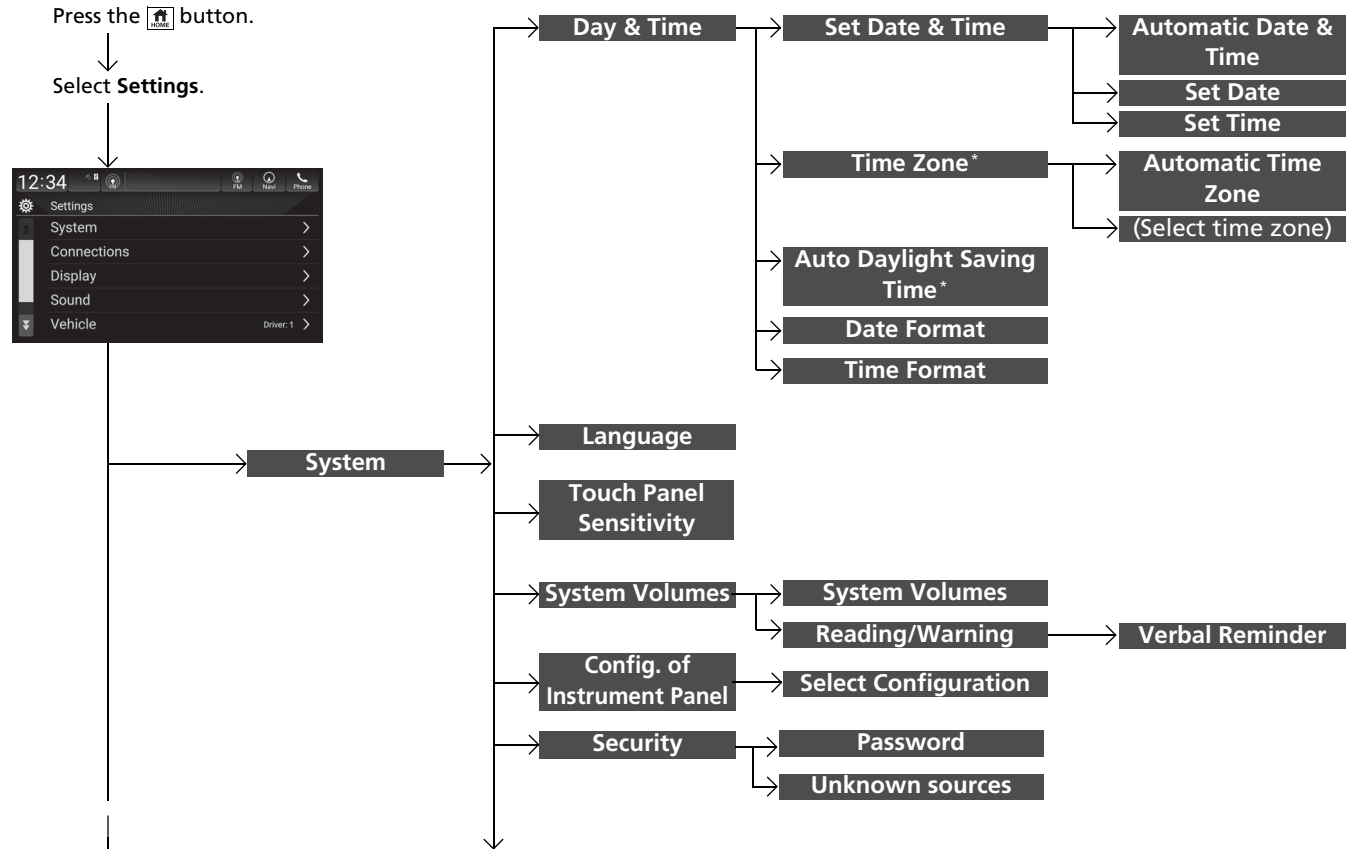
When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

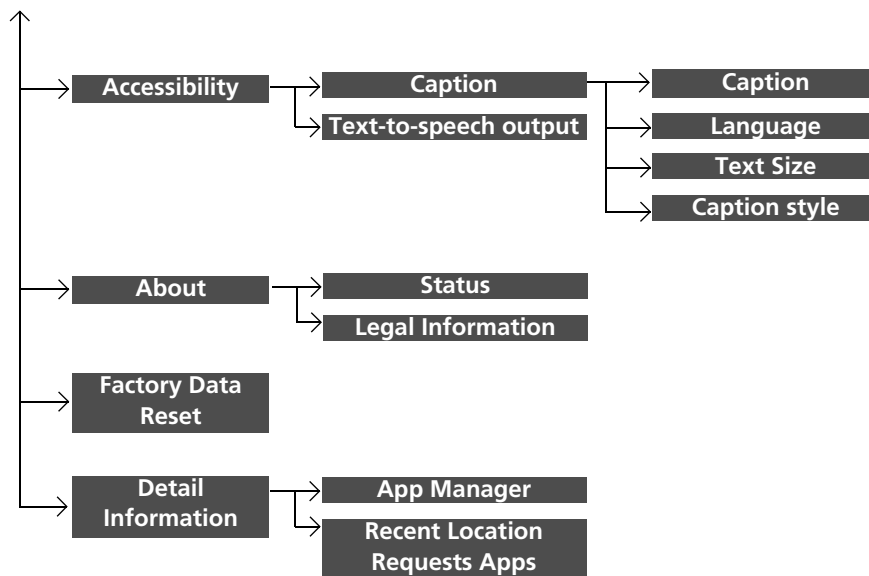
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

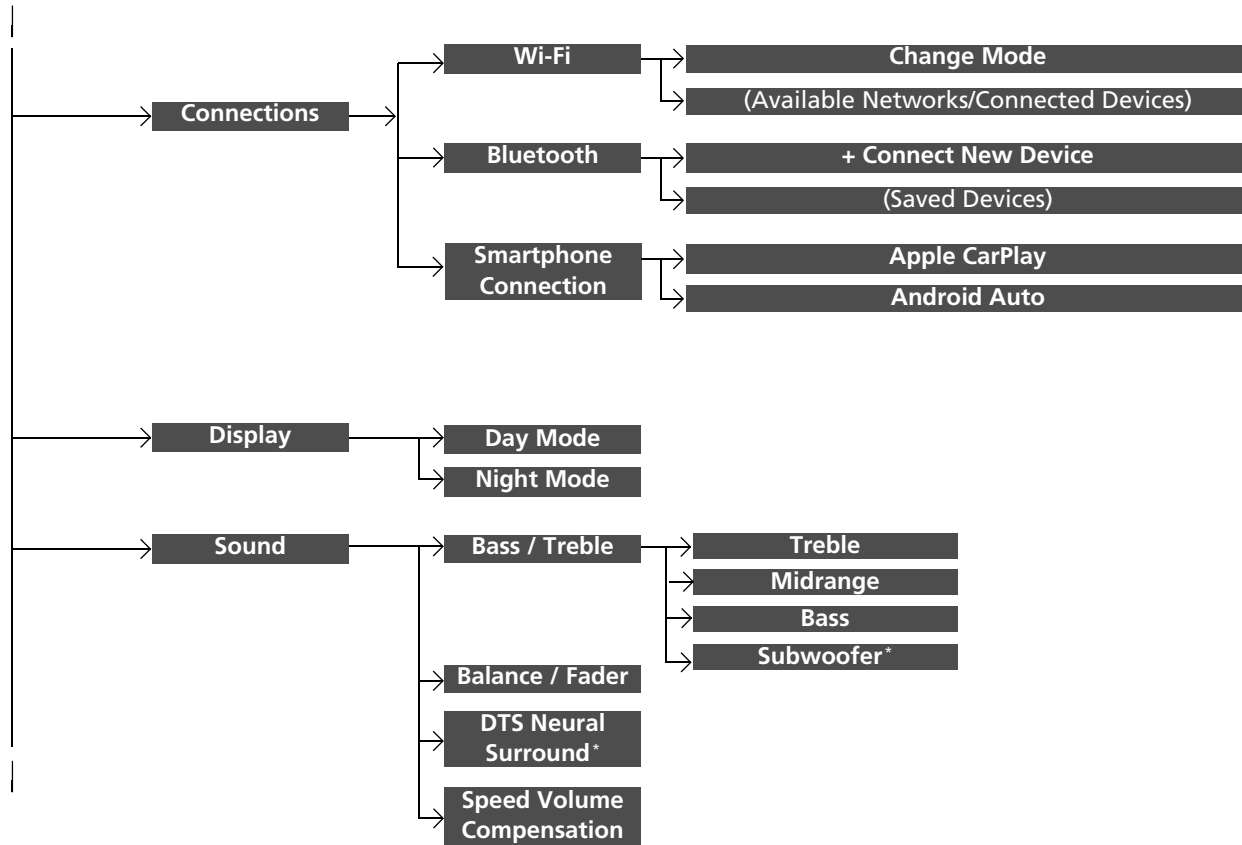
➤ **List of customizable options** P. 297

■ Customization flow

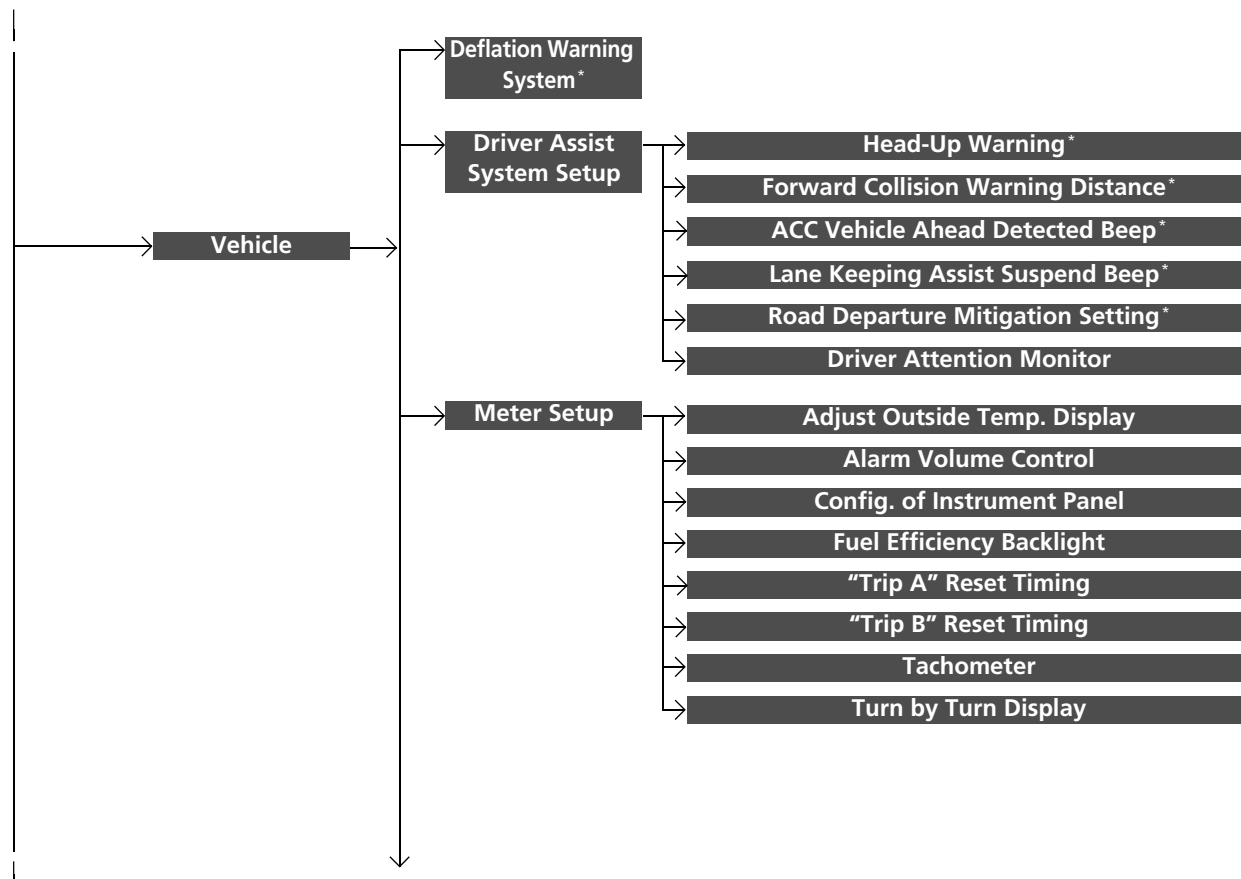


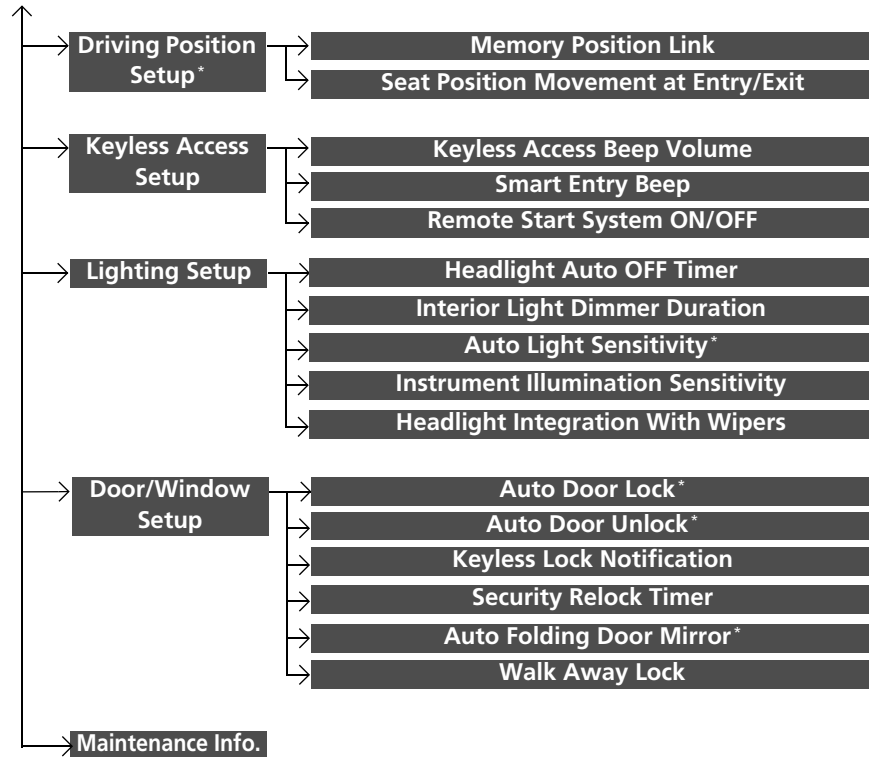
* Not available on all models



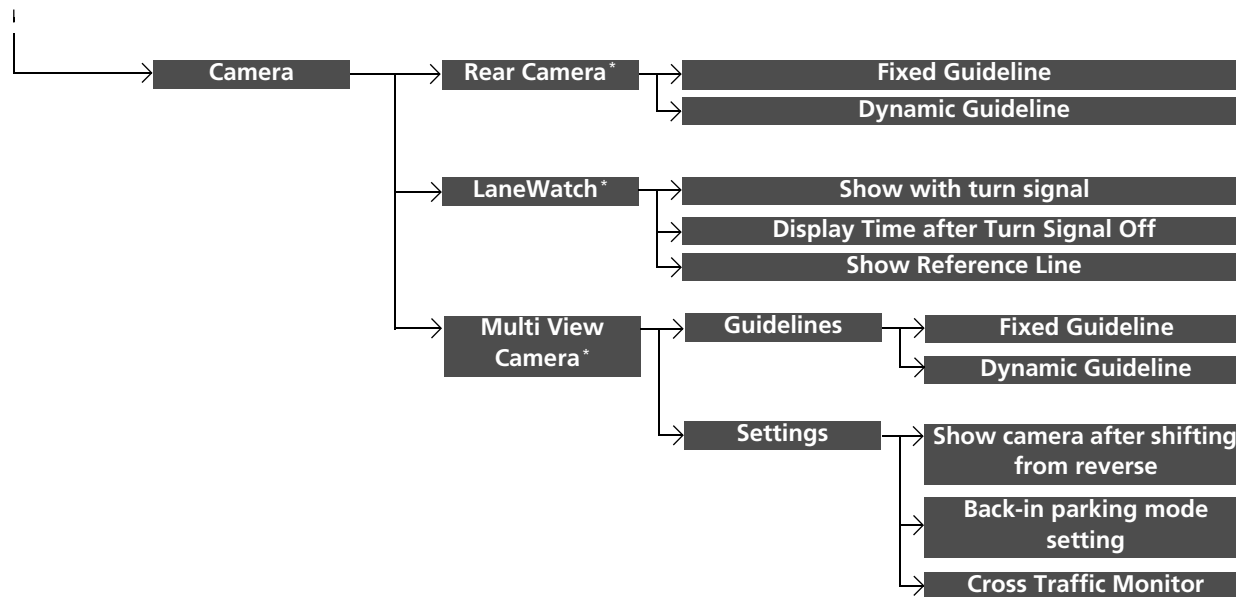


* Not available on all models





* Not available on all models



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Day & Time	Automatic Date & Time	Selects ON to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select OFF to cancel this function.	ON^{*1}/OFF
		Set Date & Time		
		Set Date	Adjusts date. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Adjusting the Clock P. 150	—
		Set Time	Adjusts clock. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Adjusting the Clock P. 150	—
		Automatic Time Zone	Sets the navigation system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	ON^{*1}/OFF
		Time Zone[*] (Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
		Auto Daylight Saving Time[*]	Select ON to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select OFF to cancel this function.	ON^{*1}/OFF
		Date Format	Sets the date format.	MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY^{*1}/ YYYY/MM/DD
		Time Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H .	12H^{*1}/24H

^{*1}:Default Setting

^{*} Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Language		Changes the display language.	English (United Kingdom)*², English (United States)*², or Thai*² See other selectable languages on the screen.
	Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Normal*¹
	System Volumes	System Volumes	Changes the system sounds volume.	—
		Reading/Warning Verbal Reminder	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	ON*¹/OFF
	Config. of Instrument Panel	Select Configuration	Selects whether the apps display comes on or not on the driver information interface.	Config.1*¹/Config.2/Config.3
	Security	Password	Set the value of password display.	ON*¹/OFF
		Unknown sources	—	ON/OFF*¹

*1:Default Setting
*2:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Accessibility	Caption	Turns the subtitles on and off.	ON/OFF*1
		Language	Change the subtitle language.	Default*1 See other selectable languages on the screen.
		CaptionText Size	Change the subtitle Text Size.	Very small/Small/Normal*1/Large
		Caption style	Change the subtitle Caption style.	Use app defaults*1/ White on black/ Black on white/ Yellow on black/ Yellow on blue/ Custom
		Text-to-speech output	Current TTS engine TtsService	—
	About	Status Legal Information	Displays the Android setting items.	—

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. 🔍 Defaulting All the Settings P. 308	Continue/Cancel
	Detail Information	App Manager	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—
		Recent Location Requests Apps	Displays the recent location requests from apps.	—
	Connections	Wi-Fi	Change Mode	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.
(Available Networks/ Connected Devices)			Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
Bluetooth		+ Connect New Device	Pairs a new phone to HFT. 🔍 Phone Setup P. 314	—
		(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. 🔍 Phone Setup P. 314	—
Smartphone Connection		Apple CarPlay	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
		Android Auto	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Display	Day Mode		Adjusts the settings of the audio/information screen. ➡ Display Setup P. 250	—
	Night Mode			
Sound	Bass / Treble	Treble	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ Adjusting the Sound P. 249	—
		Midrange		
		Bass		
		Subwoofer*		
	Balance / Fader			
	DTS Neural Surround*			
	Speed Volume Compensation			
Vehicle	Deflation Warning System*		Initialise the deflation warning system.	Initialise/Cancel
	Driver Assist System Setup	Head-up Warning*	Turns the head-up warning on and off.	ON* ¹ /OFF
		Forward Collision Warning Distance*	Changes Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alert distance.	Normal* ¹ /Near/Far

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Driver Assist System Setup	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep *	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.	ON/OFF* ¹
		Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep *	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	ON/OFF* ¹
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting *	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	Normal* ¹ /Delayed/Warning Only/Early
		Driver Attention Monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	OFF/Tactile Alert/ Tactile And Audible Alert* ¹
	Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C* ¹ ~ +3°C
		Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as the buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Max/Mid* ¹ /Min
		Config. of Instrument Panel	Selects whether the apps display comes on or not on the driver information interface.	Config.1* ¹ /Config.2/ Config.3
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON* ¹ /OFF

*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Meter Setup	"Trip A" Reset Timing Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	When Fully Refueled/ Manual Reset^{*1}/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF
		"Trip B" Reset Timing Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	When Fully Refueled/ Manual Reset^{*1}/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF
		Tachometer Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface.	ON/OFF^{*1}
		Turn by Turn Display Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	ON^{*1}/OFF
	Driving Position Setup [*]	Memory Position Link Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
		Seat Position Movement at Entry/Exit Moves the seat rearward when you get in/get out of the vehicle. Changes the setting for this feature.	ON^{*1}/OFF

^{*1}:Default Setting

^{*} Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Keyless Access Setup	Keyless Access Beep Volume ^{*2}	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors. High ^{*1} / Low
		Smart Entry Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors. ON ^{*1} / OFF
		Remote Start System ON/OFF	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. ON ^{*1} / OFF
	Lighting Setup	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. 0 sec/15 sec ^{*1} / 30 sec/60 sec
		Interior Light Dimmer Duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. 15 sec/30 sec ^{*1} / 60 sec
		Auto Light Sensitivity [*]	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on. Min/Low/Mid ^{*1} / High/Max
		Instrument Illumination Sensitivity ^{*3}	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in AUTO . Min/Low/Mid ^{*1} / High/Max
		Headlight Integration With Wipers	Used to automatically come on the headlights when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch is in AUTO . ON ^{*1} / OFF

*1: Default Setting

*2: **Smart Entry Beep Volume** will be displayed when the language is set to English (United States).

*3: **Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity** will be displayed when the language is set to English (United States).

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Door/Window Setup	Auto Door Lock *	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	OFF/With Vehicle Speed^{*1}/Shift From P
		Auto Door Unlock *	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	OFF/Shift To P^{*1}/When Ignition Is Turned OFF
		Keyless Lock Notification^{*2}	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	ON^{*1}/OFF
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	30sec^{*1}/60sec/90sec
		Auto Folding Door Mirror *	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	Auto Fold With Keyless^{*1}/Manual Only
		Walk Away Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	ON/OFF^{*1}
	Maintenance Info.		Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	—





*1:Default Setting

*2:**Keyless Lock Answer Back** will be displayed when the language is set to English (United States).

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Camera *	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. 📺 Multi-View Rear Camera * P. 427	ON ^{*1} /OFF
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. 📺 Multi-View Rear Camera * P. 427	ON ^{*1} /OFF
	LaneWatch *	Show with turn signal	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
		Display Time after Turn Signal Off	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.	0 second ^{*1} /2 seconds
		Show Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch display.	ON ^{*1} /OFF

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Multi View Camera *	Guidelines	Fixed Guideline Selects whether to turn on the reference line display.  Multi-View Camera System * P. 429	ON ^{*1} / OFF
			Dynamic Guideline Selects whether to turn on the projection line display.  Multi-View Camera System * P. 429	ON ^{*1} / OFF
	Settings		Show camera after shifting from reverse Sets the rear view to be automatically switched to the front view when the transmission is shifted out of R .  Multi-View Camera System * P. 429	ON ^{*1} / OFF
			Back-in parking mode setting Selects the appropriate width according to your parking space when in Back-in Parking mode.  Multi-View Camera System * P. 429	Wide area mode ^{*1} / Narrow area mode
			Cross Traffic Monitor Turns on and off the cross traffic monitor.	ON ^{*1} / OFF

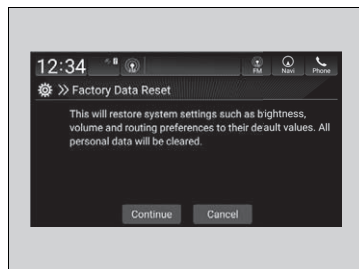
*1:Default Setting


* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

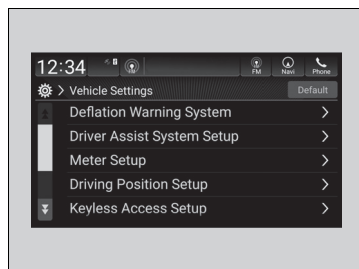
Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.


■ Defaulting System Settings



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
 - The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Default**.
5. Select **Yes**.

►► Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

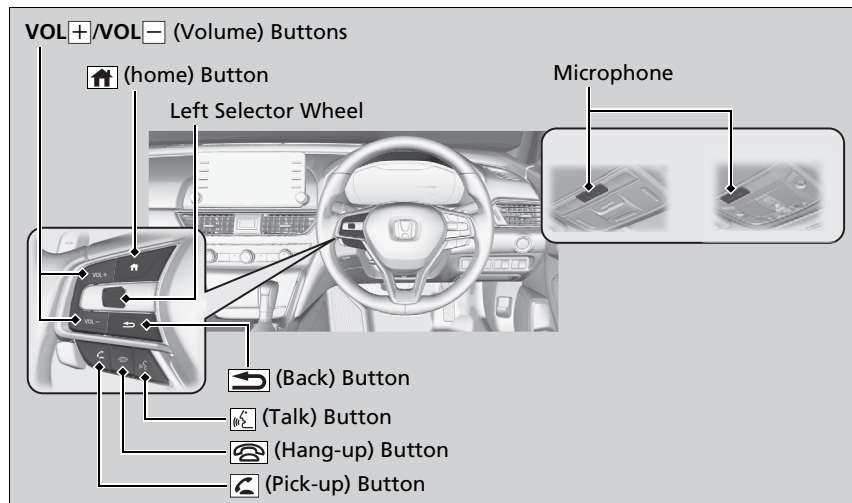
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System


Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 314


Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a phonebook name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.


If there is no favourite contact entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

➤ **Favourite Contacts** P. 319


Continued


 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up) button:** Press to end a call.


 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous screen, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:**
Press to access Voice Portal.

Left Selector Wheel: Press the  (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

 **(home) button:** Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

To go to the phone screen of the driver information interface:

1. Press the  (home) button on the steering wheel.
2. Roll up or down the left selector wheel to select **Phone**, then push the left selector wheel.
 - You can select **Favourite contacts** or **Recent Calls**.

► Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



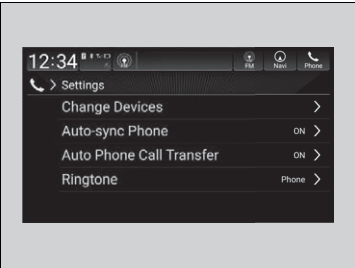
HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

■ Phone settings screen



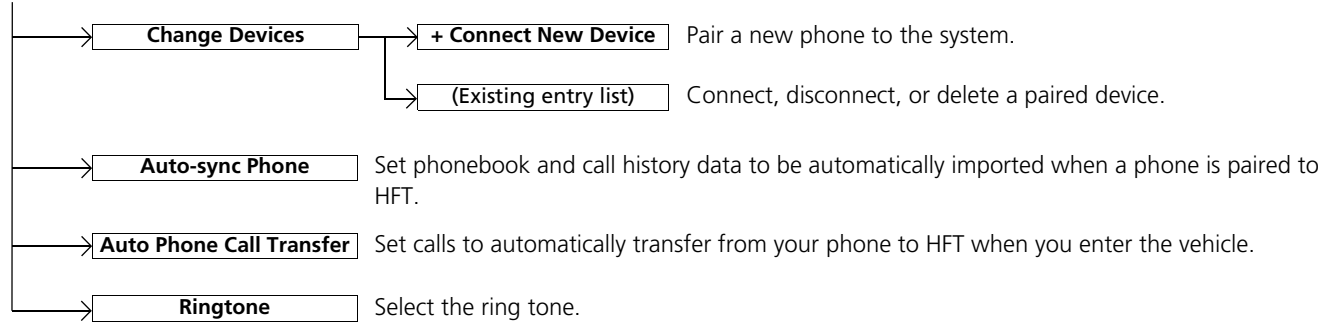
- 1. Press the  button.
- 2. Select **Phone**.
- 3. Select **Settings**.

▶▶ HFT Menus

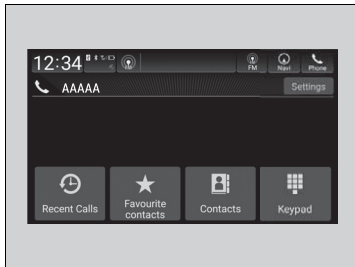
To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

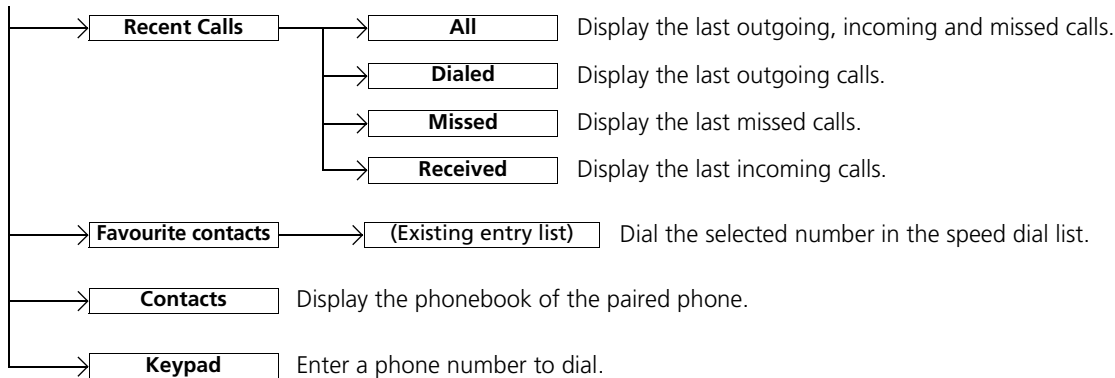
Features



■ Phone menu screen




1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.

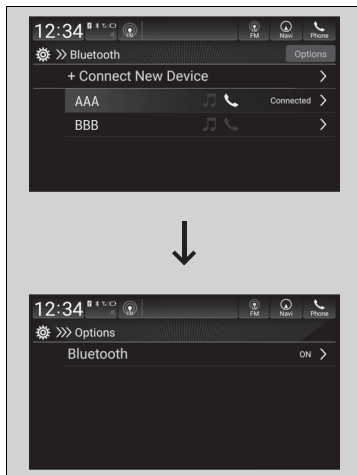


Phone Setup

■ **Bluetooth® setup**

You can turn *Bluetooth®* function on and off.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then **ON**.





■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Press the button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **Connect Phone**.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **+ Connect New Device**.
 - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
5. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.

From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
6. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.

This may vary by phone.
7. Select desired functions and then select **Save**.

☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

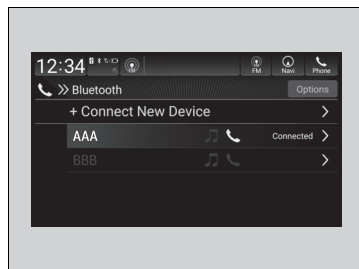
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side.



These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.
- : The phone can be used with HFT.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional Bluetooth compatible devices is unavailable.



■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 312
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
 ► HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select  or .
5. Select **Save**.

■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 312
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

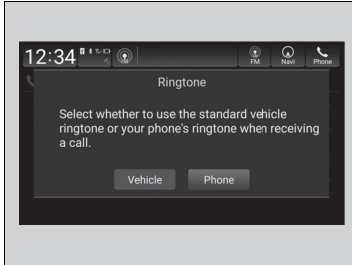
►► To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

Ring Tone

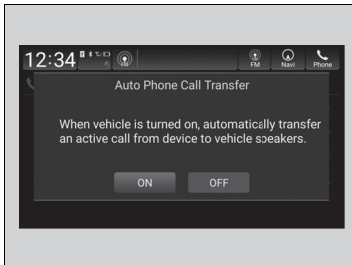
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 312
2. Select **Ringtone**.
3. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.

Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.



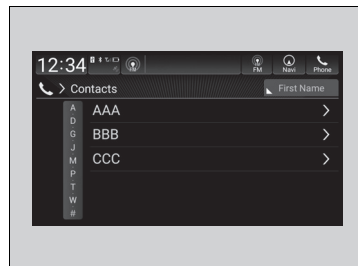
1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 312
2. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

Ring Tone

Vehicle: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

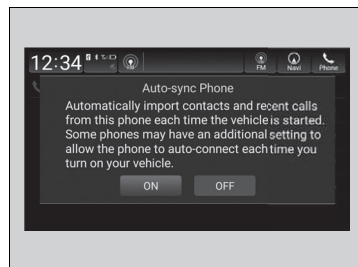


■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

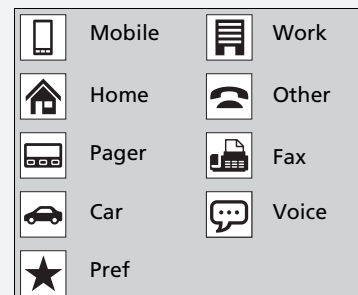
1. Go to the phone settings screen.
 📄 **Phone settings screen** P. 312
2. Select **Auto-sync Phone**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.



►► Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

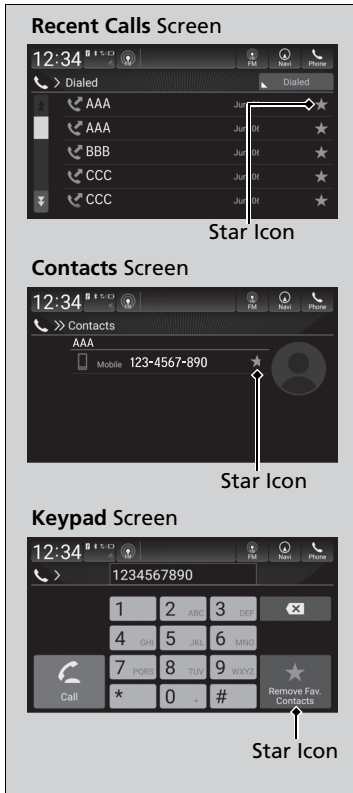
When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Favourite Contacts



To store a number as a favourite contact:

1. Go to the phone menu screen.

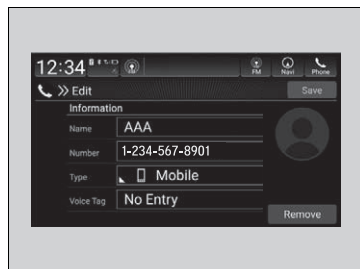
► **Phone menu screen** P. 313

2. Select the **Recent Calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad** screen.

3. Select the star icon.

► A notification appears on the screen if the favourite contact is successfully stored.

► To remove the favourite contact, select the star icon again.



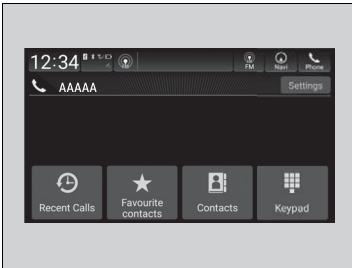
■ To edit a favourite contact

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 313
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favourite contact entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Save**.

■ To delete a favourite contact

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 313
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favourite contact entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Making a Call

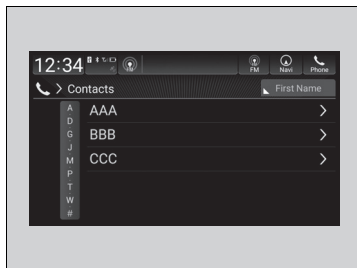


You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or favourite contact entries.

⌘ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.



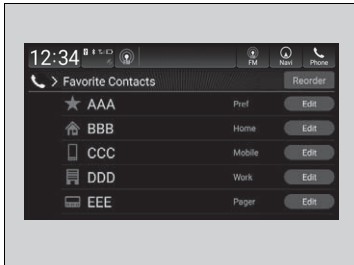
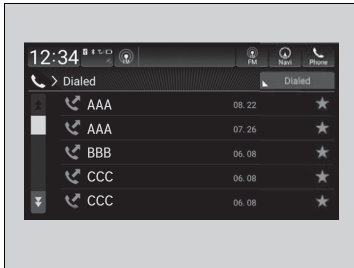
■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 313
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
 ► You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 313
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
 ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Go to the phone menu screen.

► **Phone menu screen** P. 313

2. Select **Recent Calls**.

► You can sort by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

3. Select a number.

► Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a favourite contact entry

1. Go to the phone menu screen.

► **Phone menu screen** P. 313

2. Select **Favourite contacts**.

► You can change the order of favourite contact entries by selecting **Reorder**.

3. Select a number.

► Dialing starts automatically.



► To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

Options During a Call

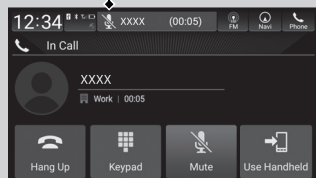
The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

Mute Icon




The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.


Select the option.

- The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.


Receiving a Call



Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving	326
Towing a Trailer	330
When Driving	
Starting the Engine	331
Precautions While Driving.....	337
Continuously Variable Transmission....	338
Shifting	339, 341
SPORT Mode *	345
ECON Mode	346
Cruise Control*.....	347
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	351
Agile Handling Assist	353
Deflation Warning System*	354
LaneWatch *	356

Honda Sensing*	358
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	361
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	370
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)....	386
Road Departure Mitigation System....	397
Front Sensor Camera	403
Radar Sensor.....	405
Braking	
Brake System	406
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	412
Brake Assist System.....	413
Emergency Stop Signal.....	414

Parking Your Vehicle	
When Stopped	415
Parking Sensor System *	417
Cross Traffic Monitor*	423
Multi-View Rear Camera*	427
Multi-View Camera System*	429
Honda Smart Parking Assist System* ...	439
Refueling	
Fuel Information	467
How to Refuel	469
Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions	471
Turbo Engine Vehicle	472

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
- **☒ Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 509
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - ✚ **Load Limit** P. 329
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 197
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 203
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 194
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 193

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 39
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - 📌 **Indicators** P. 86

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 566

Australian and New Zealand models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 566

Load Limit

⚠ WARNING

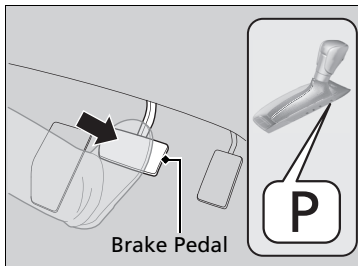
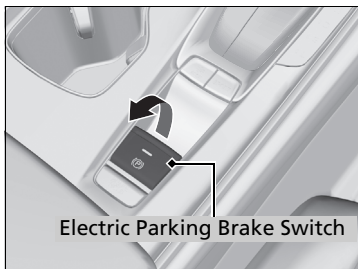
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 - The parking brake indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
 - The parking brake must be applied to start the engine.
2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N** with the parking brake applied, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

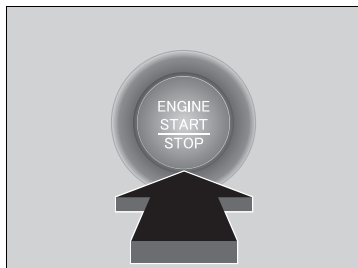
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 166



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

» Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

❏ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 542

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

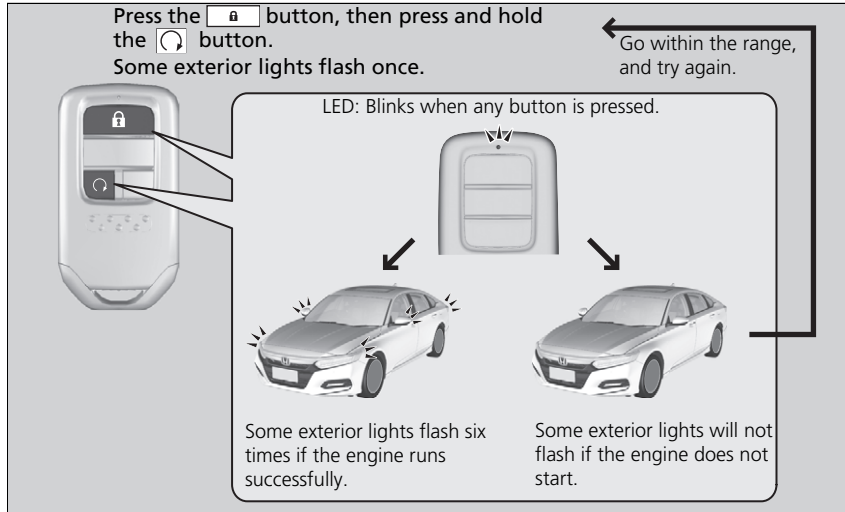
Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

Remote Engine Start

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

To start the engine



When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the **a** button, then press and hold the **P** button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

Remote Engine Start

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

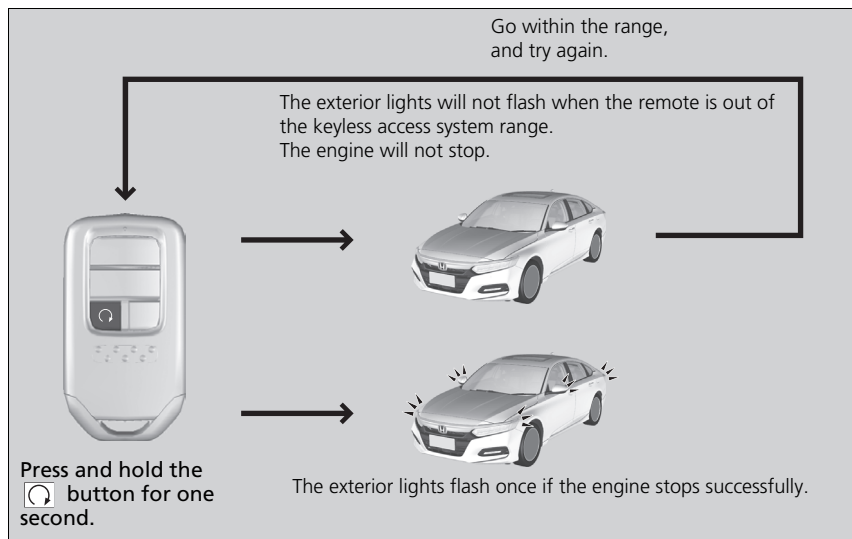
If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the audio/information screen.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than **P**.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the boot is unlocked.

Continued

■ To stop the engine



▶▶ Remote Engine Start

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is activated.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.
- You press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the brake pedal.
- You press the shift lever release button.

▶▶ Remote Engine Start

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically activate climate control.

When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in auto mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.
- The seat heaters* are activated.

▶ **Front Seat Heaters*** P. 221



* Not available on all models

■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button on the keyless access remote





1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case


2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into . Select  when reversing.
3. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - Make sure the parking brake indicator (red) goes off.


■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into , * or * when facing uphill, or  when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

» Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button on the keyless access remote

The engine stops when the transmission position is changed from  before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

» Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Precautions While Driving

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

▶▶ Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not change the transmission while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Continuously Variable Transmission

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

» Precautions While Driving

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the transmission into **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

» In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

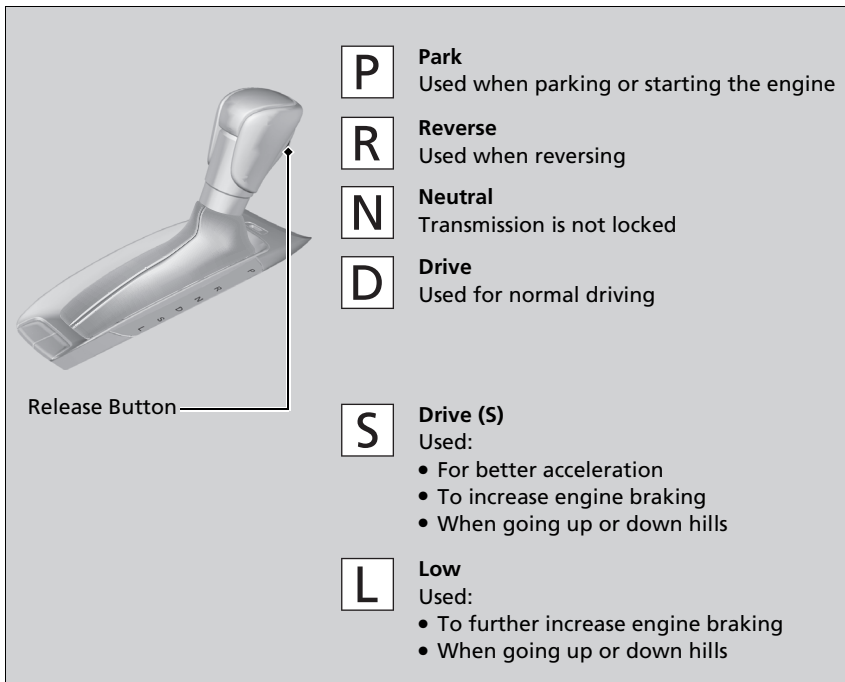
Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Models without paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions

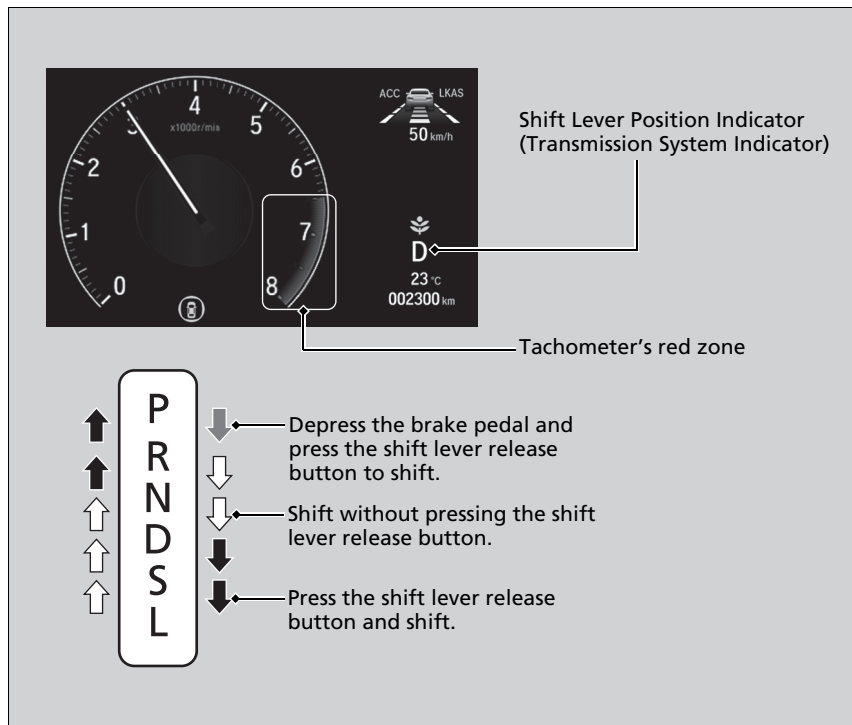


▣Shifting

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in **P**.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in **N** while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

■ Shift Lever Operation



►► Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

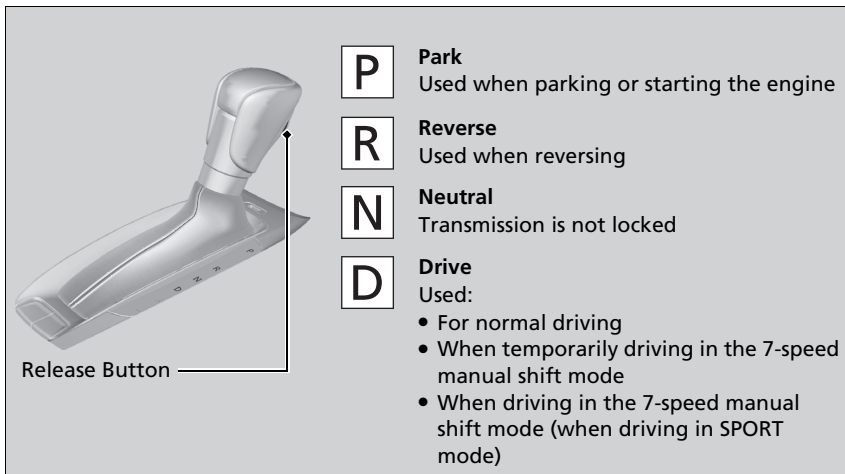
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Models with paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



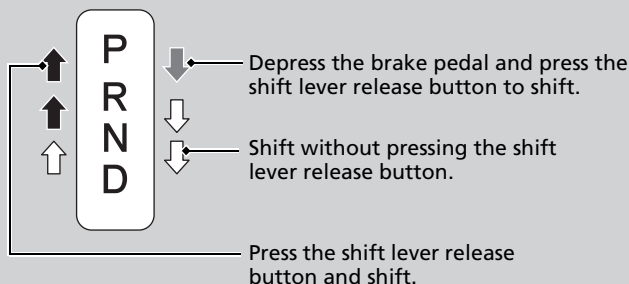
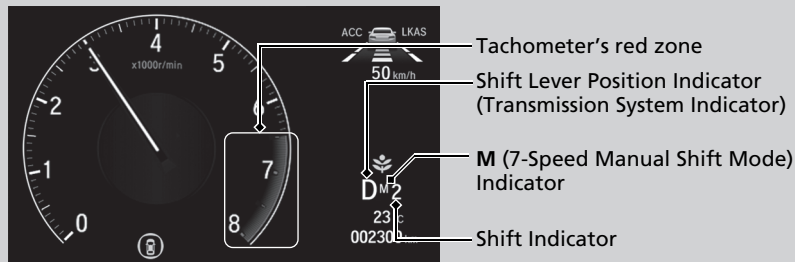
Shifting

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in **P**.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in **N** while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in **D**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **+** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in **D** with **SPORT** mode:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, pressing the **SPORT** button or pulling the **+** paddle shifter for a few seconds. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator go off.

⌘ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

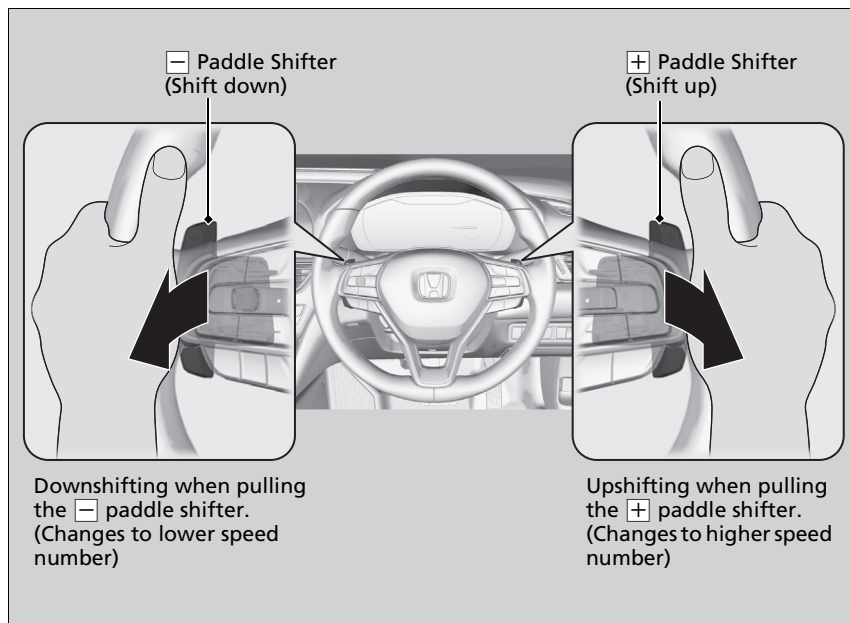
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal **D** driving mode.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



▶▶ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

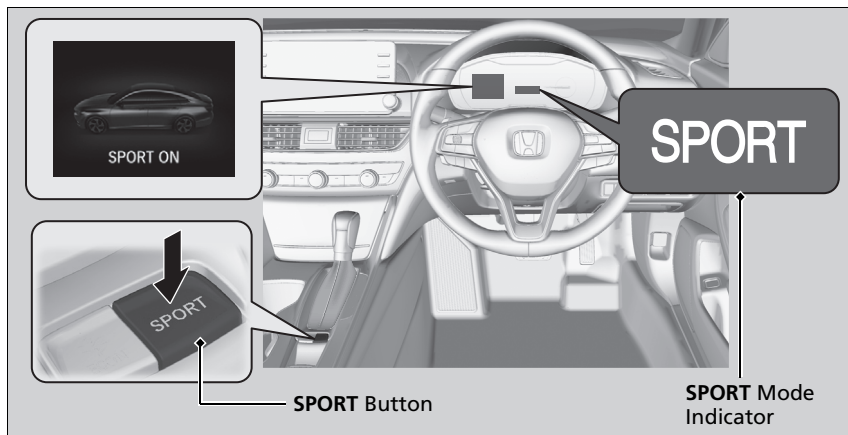
Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

SPORT Mode*



To turn the SPORT mode on and off, press the **SPORT** button.

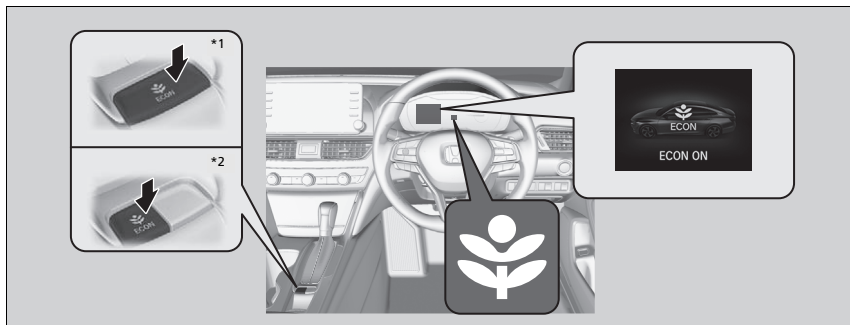
The SPORT mode increases engine performance and transmission.
This mode is suitable for driving on hills or through curves on mountain roads.

The SPORT mode is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

The ambient meter colour changes to a constant red and the turbo meter appears on the driver information interface.

* Not available on all models

ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, climate control system, and cruise control*.

» ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

*1 : Models without SPORT mode

*2 : Models with SPORT mode

* Not available on all models

Cruise Control*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range above roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:
In **D** or **S***

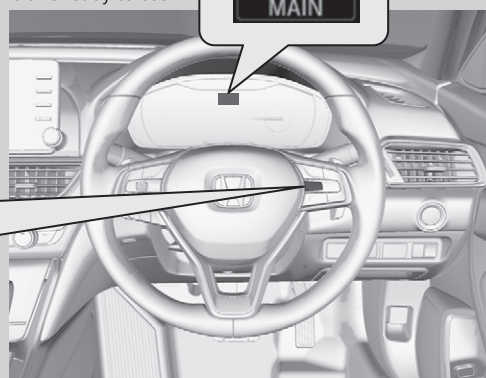
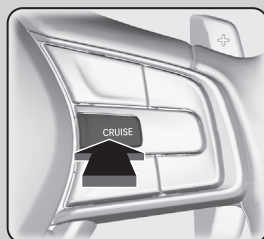
Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.



How to use

CRUISE MAIN is on in the instrument panel.
Cruise control is ready to use.

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



⚠ Cruise Control*

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

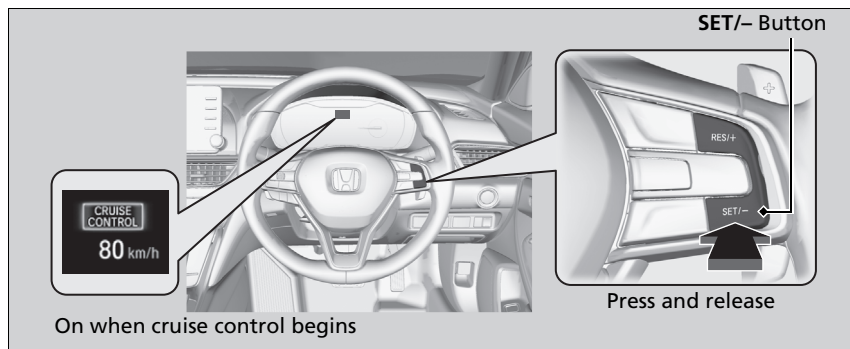
It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in the ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

* Not available on all models

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **SET/-** button when you reach the desired speed.

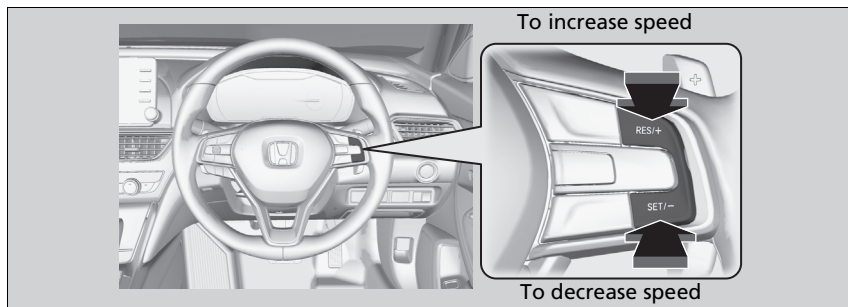
The moment you release the **SET/-** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The set speed is displayed. **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on the driver information interface.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** buttons on the steering wheel.



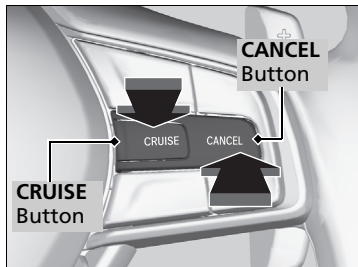
- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h.

▣ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **SET/-** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

* Not available on all models

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator and displayed set speed go off.

►► To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

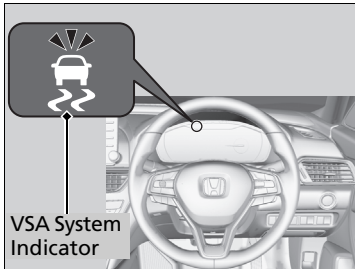
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

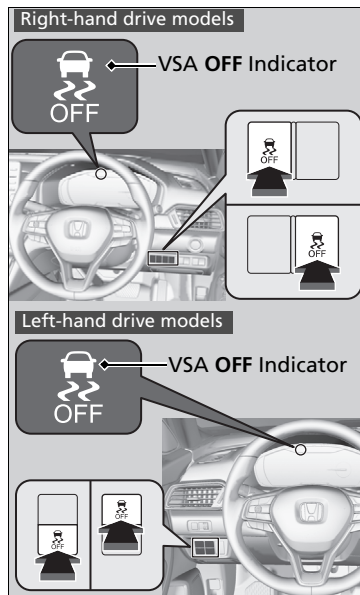
The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, safety support*, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting a battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


* Not available on all models

■ VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

⌘ Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Deflation Warning System*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.


Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

 **Checking Tyres** P. 509

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

Deflation Warning System*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.


Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

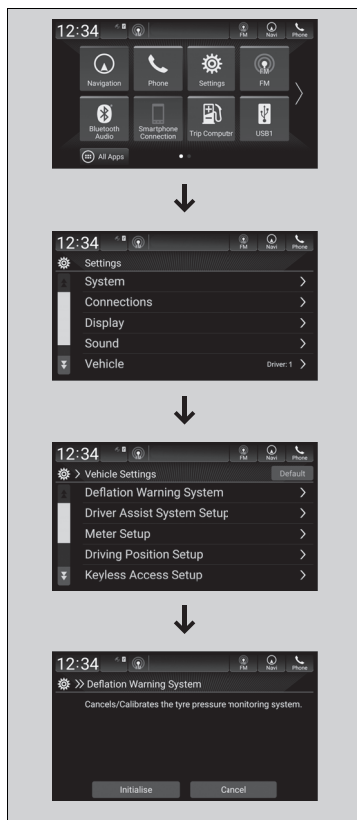
 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 509

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at initialisation.
- Tyre chains are used.



You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the **HOME** button.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.

5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.

6. Select **Initialise**.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 5-6.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

Deflation Warning System*

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, safety support*, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting a battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

Deflation Warning System cannot be initialised if a compact spare tyre is installed.

The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.

During this period, if the engine is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.

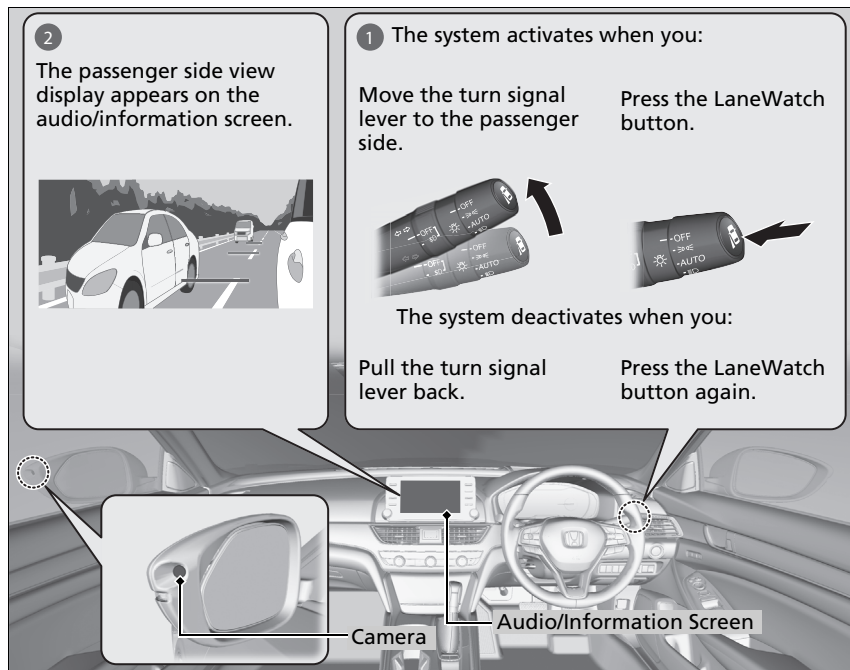
If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

* Not available on all models

LaneWatch*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



▶▶ LaneWatch*

⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.


The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.

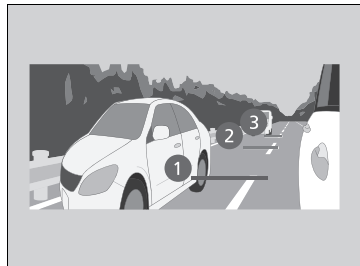
The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with turn signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch display comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off:** Changes the remaining LaneWatch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Show Reference Line:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch display.
- **Display:** Adjusts display settings.
 **Customized Features** P. 290

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 is farther away.

☒ LaneWatch*

LaneWatch display does not come on when the transmission is in **R**.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

☒ Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

* Not available on all models

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors: a radar sensor located at the lower part of the front bumper and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

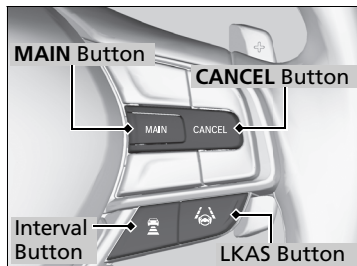
■ **The functions which do not require switch operations to activate**

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➡ P. 361
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➡ P. 397

■ **The functions which require switch operations to activate**

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ➡ P. 370
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➡ P. 386

■ Operation Switches for the ACC with Low Speed Follow/LKAS

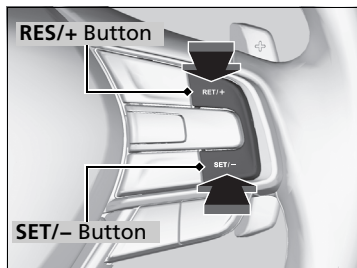


■ MAIN Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.

■ LKAS Button

Press to activate or cancel the LKAS.



■ RES/+ and SET/- Button

Press **RES/+** button to resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.

Press **SET/-** button to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

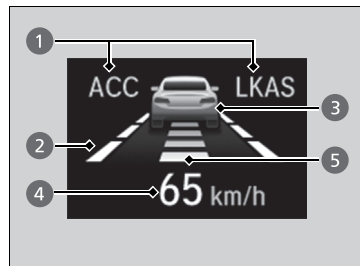
■ Interval Button

Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

■ Driver Information Interface Content



You can see the current state of ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS.

- ① Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow, and LKAS are ready to be activated.
- ② Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- ③ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.
- ④ Shows the set vehicle speed.
- ⑤ Shows the set vehicle interval.

▶▶ Driver Information Interface Content

Models with head-up display

You can have the head-up display show you the current state of each function.

➤ **Head-Up Display*** P. 144

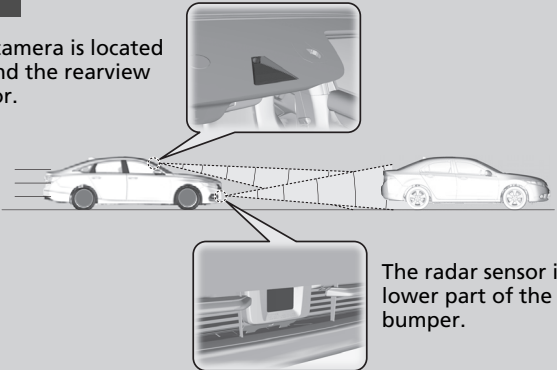
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

■ How the system works

When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
 - Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or travelling in your same direction.
 - A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.
- Your vehicle speed is above 100 km/h, and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you travelling in your same direction.

Continued

⌘ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 365

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

➤ **Radar Sensor** P. 405

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

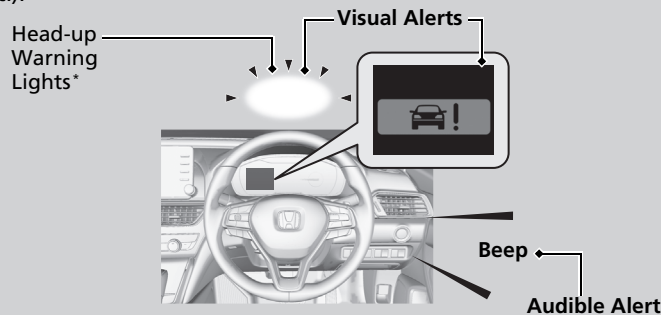
➤ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 403

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through audio/information screen setting options.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 290

▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

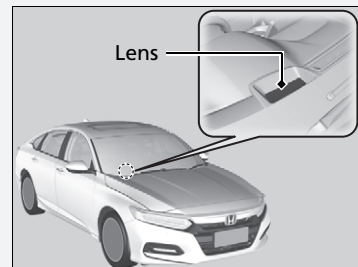
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 365

Models with head-up display

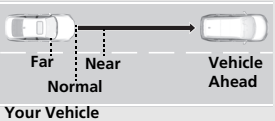
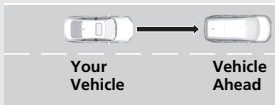

The head-up warning uses a lens located at the front end of the dashboard.

Do not cover the lens or spill any liquid on it.

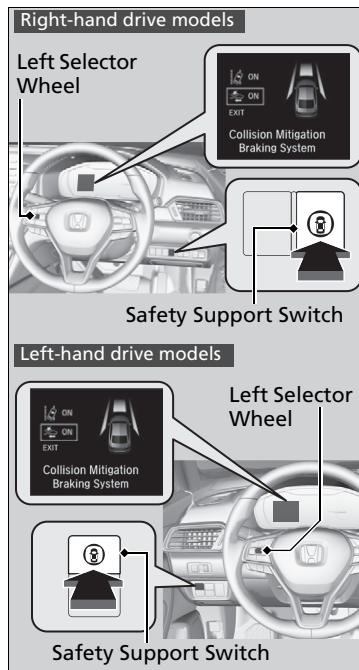


■ Collision Alert Stages


The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in Far , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in Normal setting, and in Near , at a shorter distance than in Normal .	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

CMBS On and Off



When you turn the CMBS on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to the  symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions:

▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 365

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, safety support, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting a battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 403

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, pedestrians or other vehicles may not be detected).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

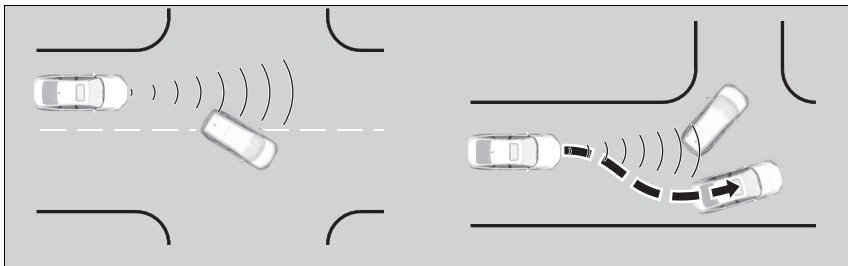
The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

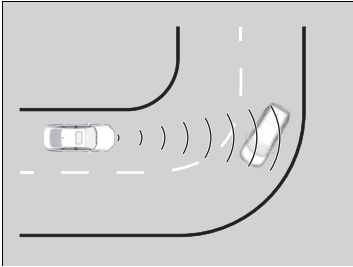
■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.



■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

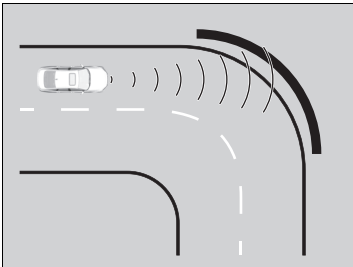


■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.



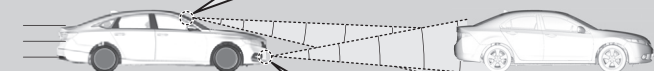
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

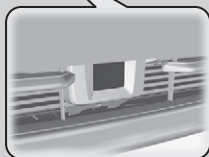
When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.



■ Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.

No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.

■ Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In **D**.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING

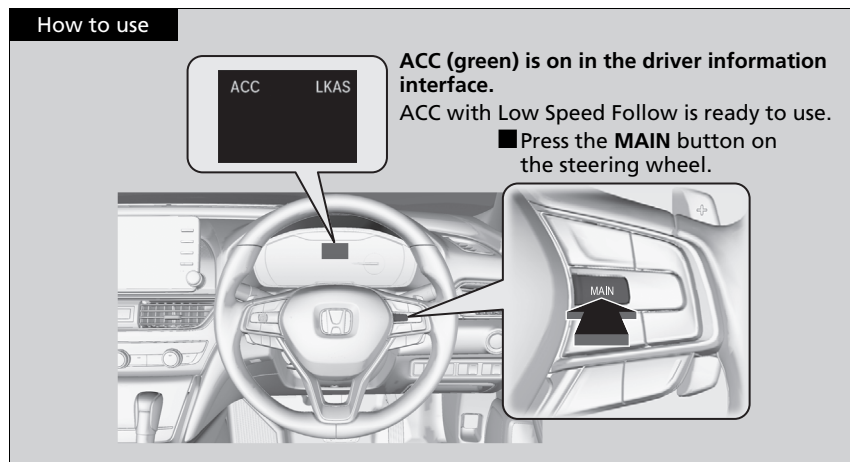
ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

■ How to activate the system



▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

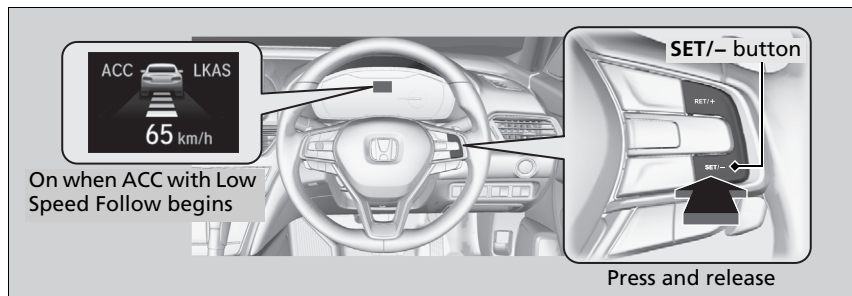
▶ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 377

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with Low Speed Follow will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **SET/-** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

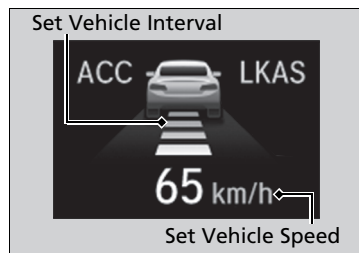
When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed. If the vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, safety support, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting a battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.

Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

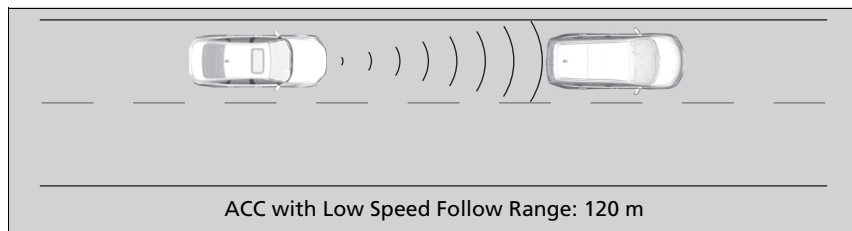
When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated. By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

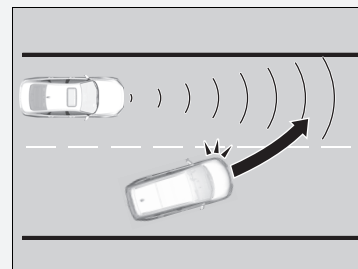
📌 **To Set or Change Following-Interval** P. 381



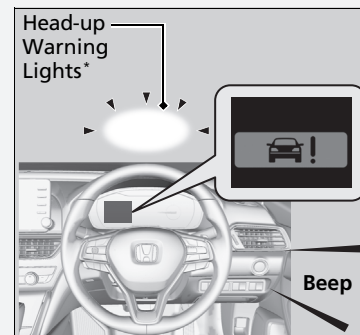
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

▶ When in Operation

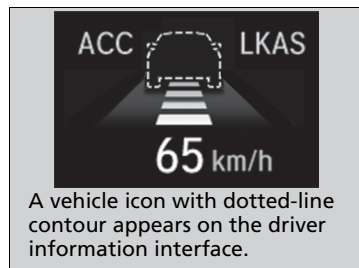
If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface, and the head-up warning lights* flash.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

⌘ When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.

Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

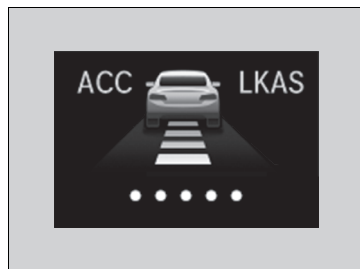
⌘ **Customized Features** P. 290

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

⌘ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 377

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The message appears on the driver information interface.

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the prior set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

▶▶ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

⚠ WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** with Low Speed Follow indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the radar sensor cover is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

▣ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

▣ **Radar Sensor** P. 405

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

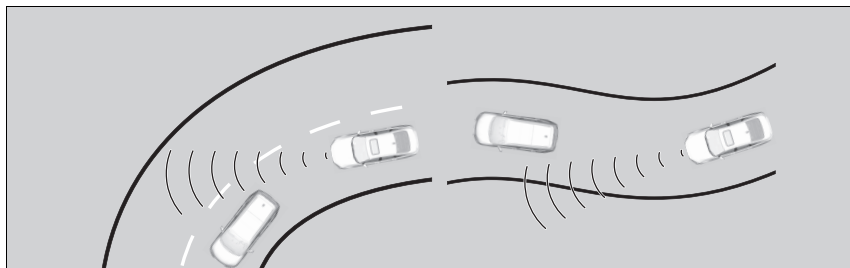
▣ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 403

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

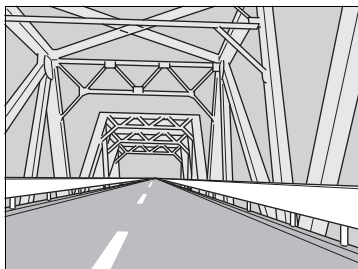
■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.

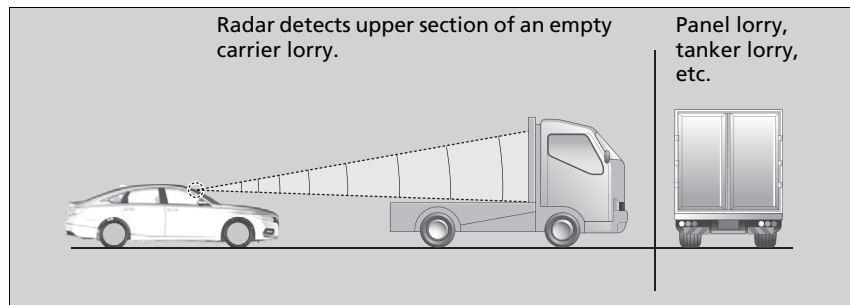


- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



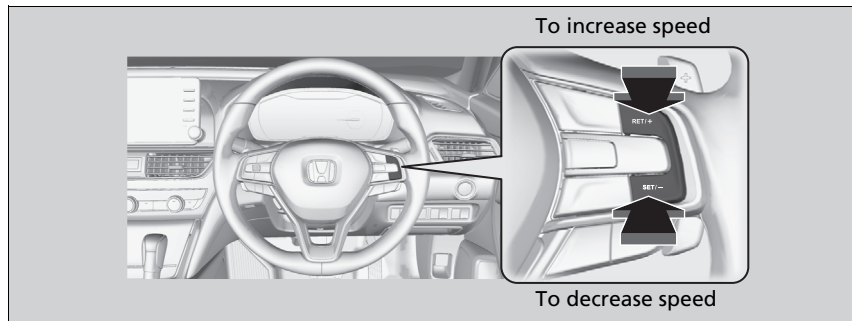
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel.



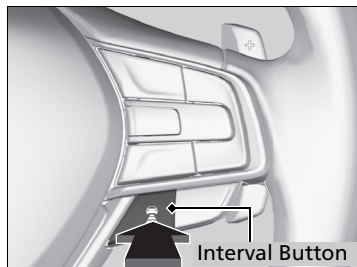
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.


▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **SET/-** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-Interval







Press the  (Interval) button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through short, middle, long, and extra long following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle’s following speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

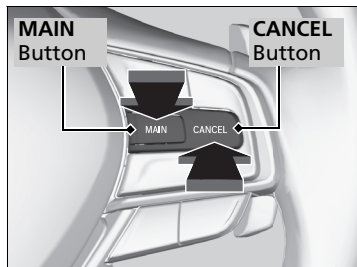
Following-Interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		24.7 metres 1.1 sec	31.5 metres 1.1 sec
Middle		34.2 metres 1.5 sec	43.4 metres 1.5 sec
Long		46.8 metres 2.1 sec	60.8 metres 2.1 sec
Extra Long		63.5 metres 2.9 sec	83.4 metres 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

▶▶ To Set or Change Following-Interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver’s responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
 - Press the **MAIN** button.
- ▶ The **ACC** with Low Speed Follow indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.

▣ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

In the following cases, a buzzer sounds, ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated, and the **Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep. Control Vehicle Speed** message appears in the driver information interface.

- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).

▶ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with Low Speed Follow to cancel improves, then press the **SET/−** button.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

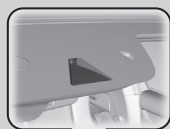
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Except Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

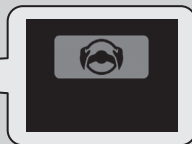
The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front Sensor Camera
Monitors the lane lines.

■ Tactile and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

▶▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

▶ Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 105

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 394

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ Front Sensor Camera P. 403

Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ **Steering input assist**

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ **Front Sensor Camera**
Monitors the lane lines.

■ **Tactile, audible and visual alerts**
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

▶▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

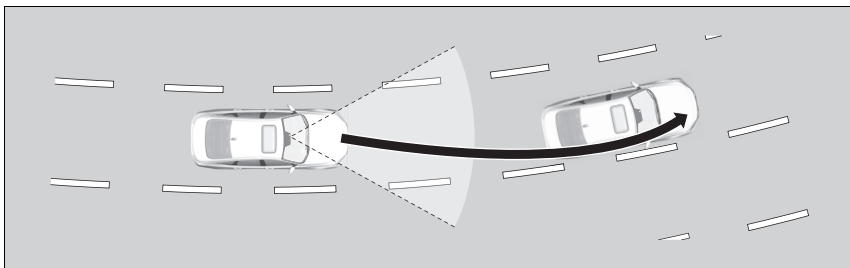
The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

Continued

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



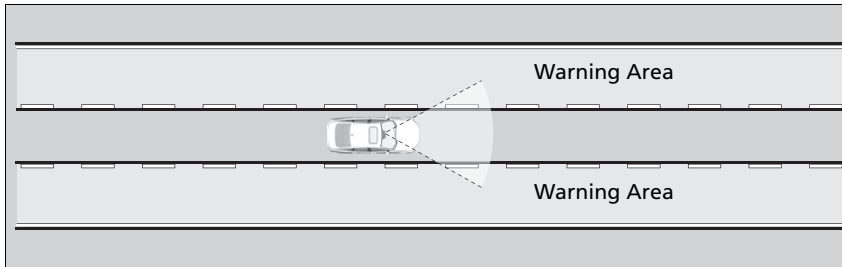
■ Lane Departure Warning Function

Except Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.

Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



■ When the System can be Used

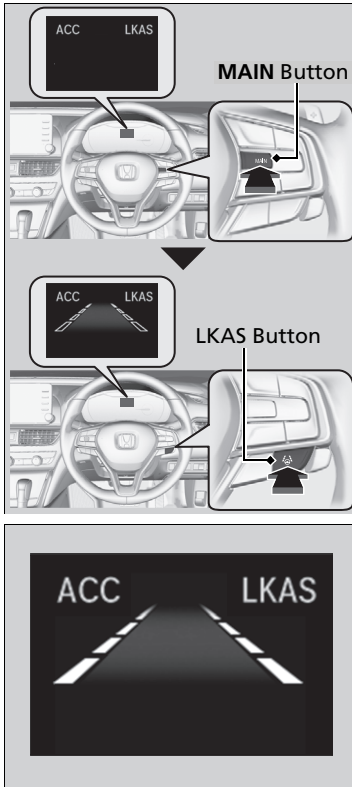
The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.

⌘ When the System can be Used

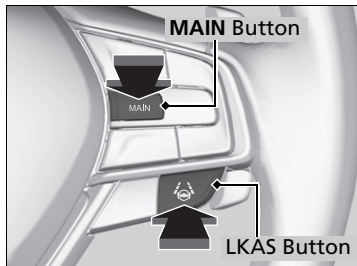
If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.
 - ▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.
The system is ready to use.
2. Press the LKAS button.
 - ▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.
The system is activated.
3. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
 - ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To cancel

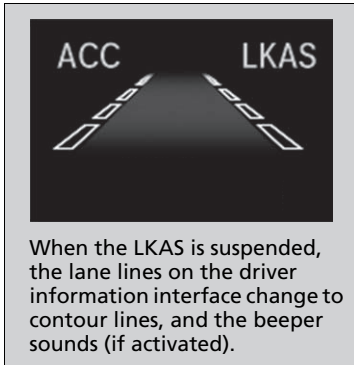


To cancel the LKAS:
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶ To cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with Low Speed Follow on and off.



■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to **HI**.
 - ▶ Turning the wipers off or setting it to **LO** resumes the LKAS.
- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate at high speed.
 - ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate at low speed.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
 - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 180 km/h.

Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models

- The Road Departure Mitigation system is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

■ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations**

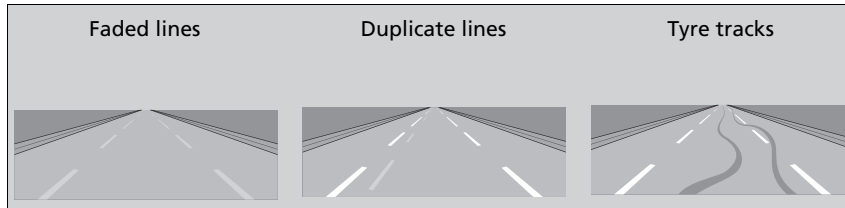
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ **Environmental conditions**

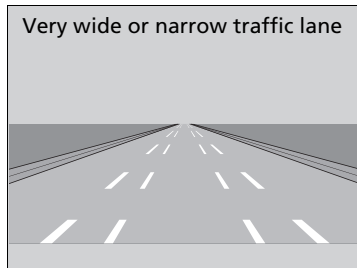
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



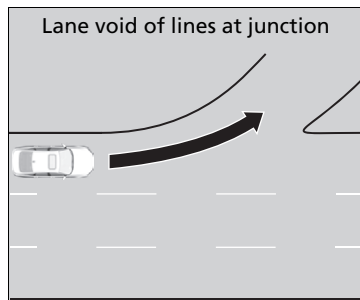
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.



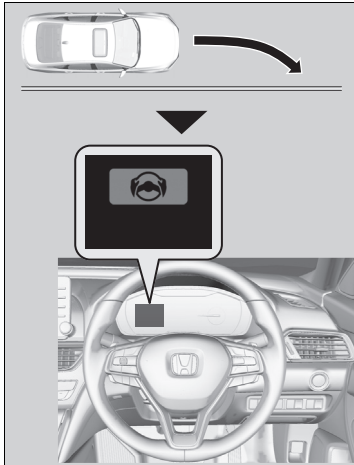
■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Road Departure Mitigation System


Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 290

As a visual alert, the  appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

⚠ Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 403

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ **Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations** P. 401

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

In the following case, a beeper sounds, a message related to the ACC with Low Speed Follow appears on the driver information interface, and the braking function controlled by the Road Departure Mitigation system is cancelled.

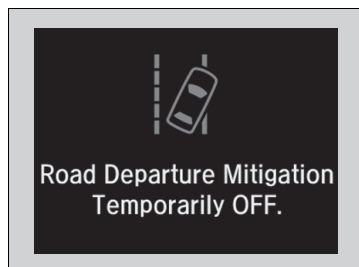
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).

Continued

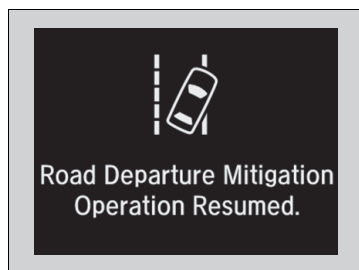
Except Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Singaporean, Bruneian, Malaysian, Australian and New Zealand models



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the warning to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is partially disabled.

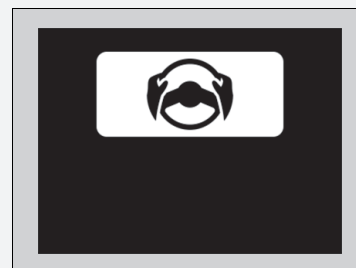


After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Early** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the message below will appear in case the system determines a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

▶ Customized Features P. 290



■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

⌘ How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

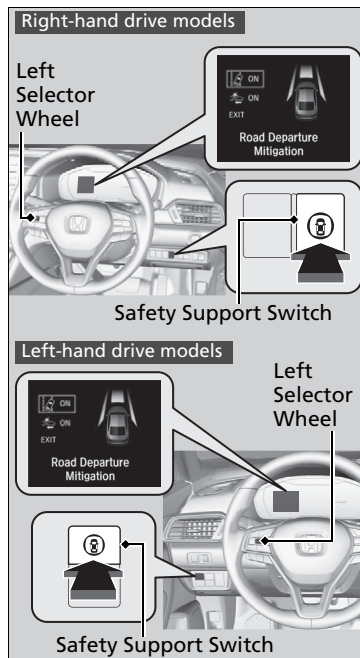
⌘ Safety Support Indicator (Amber)* P. 102

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:


- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

* Not available on all models

Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off



When you turn the Road Departure Mitigation system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to the  symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected ON or OFF setting each time you start the engine.

Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 290

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, safety support, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting a battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.

Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

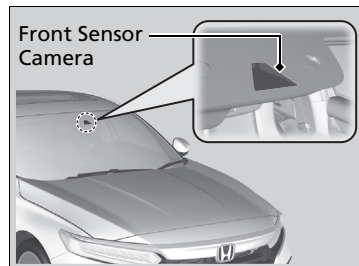
■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as LKAS, Road Departure Mitigation system, ACC with Low Speed Follow, and CMBS, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera

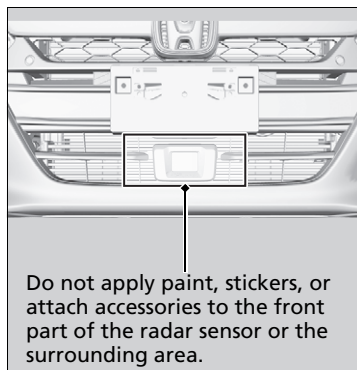
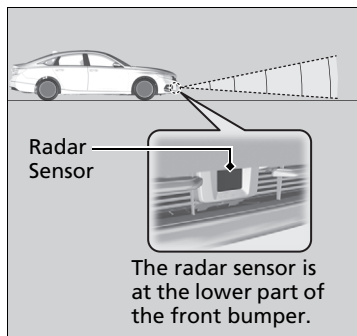
If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.

- Do not change the position of the radar sensor or any of the surrounding parts.
- Do not apply paint, stickers, or attach non-genuine accessories to the front part of the radar sensor or the surrounding area. Be particularly careful that any custom licence plate frame or other accessory does not block any part of the radar beam path (see adjacent illustration).

⚠ Radar Sensor

Avoid strong impacts to the radar sensor cover.

For the CMBS to work properly:

- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by using the safety support switch and take your vehicle to a dealer.

📖 **CMBS On and Off** P. 364

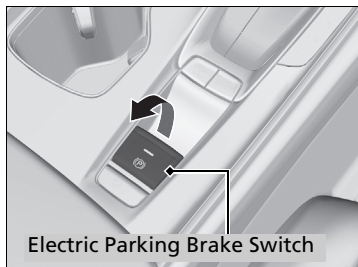
If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

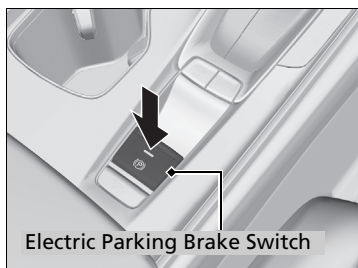


■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
- ▶ The parking brake indicator (red) comes on.



■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - ▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
 - ▶ The parking brake indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

» Braking

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

» Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

▶ **Jump Starting** P. 544

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

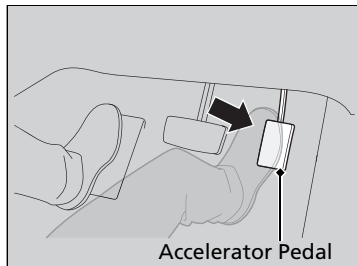
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator (red) is on.

► **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 408

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

- The indicator in the switch goes off.
- The parking brake indicator (red) goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

►► Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and the automatic brake hold system is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while the automatic brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into **[P]**.
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
 - Check that the parking brake indicator (red) has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
 - Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
 - One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
 - When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
 - To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature, you can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
 - Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
 - Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with Low Speed Follow* and the automatic brake hold system.
 - To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator (red) is on.

►► Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

►► Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

🔧 **Brake Assist System** P. 413

🔧 **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 412

🔧 Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a speed position.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

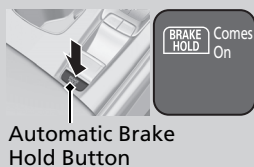
Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS* or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

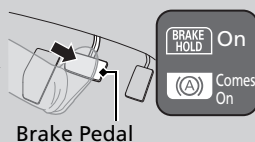
■ Turning on the system



Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

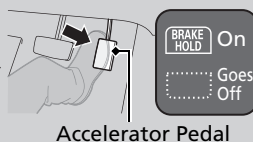
■ Activating the system



Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in **P** or **R**.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than **P** or **N**. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

►► Automatic Brake Hold

⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

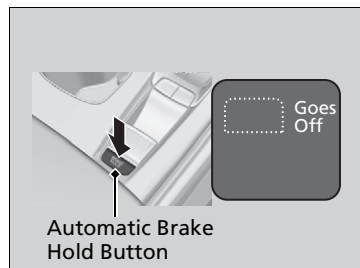
■ **The system automatically cancels when:**

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into **P** or **R**.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

►► Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

► **When Stopped** P. 415

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

►► Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

►► Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

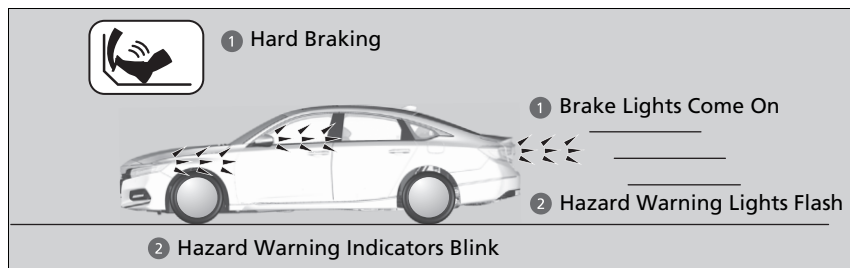
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Except Latin American, Bangladeshi and Sri Lankan models

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

» Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Put the transmission into **P**.
4. Turn off the engine.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

» Parking Your Vehicle

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift lever position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

» When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Putting the transmission into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

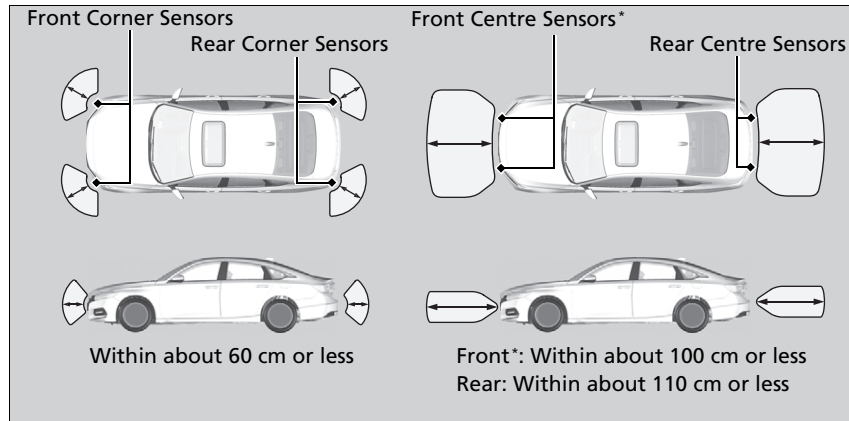
» When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



* Not available on all models

Continued

▣ Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

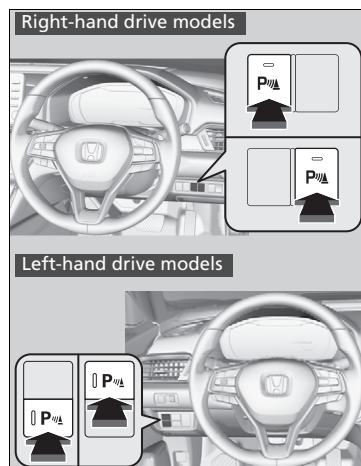
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

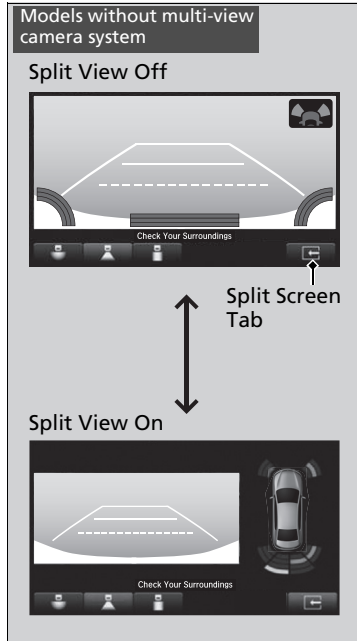
The front corner and front centre* sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than **P** or **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

▶▶ Parking sensor system on and off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

■ Screen Operation

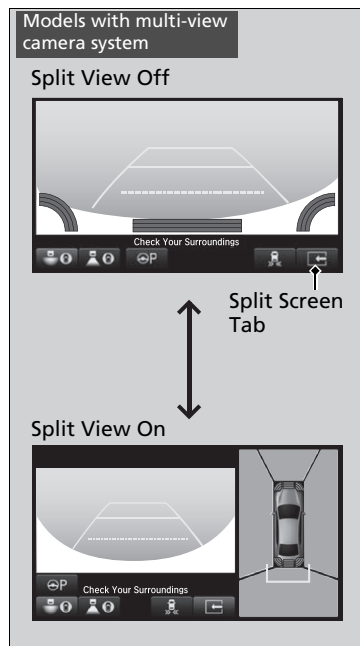


You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

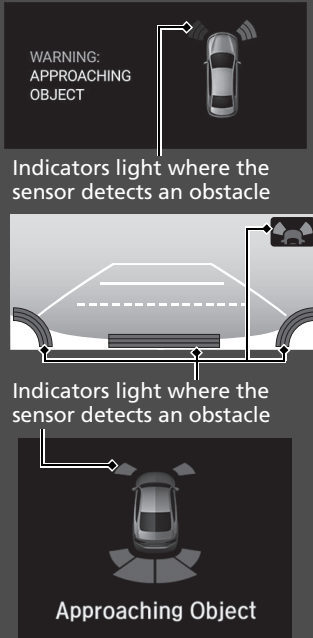
▣ Screen Operation

The split screen tab disappears, and the split view returns to the last camera view mode under the following conditions:

- If the parking sensor system is turned off.
- If there is a malfunction in the system.



■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/Information Screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front*: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Comes on* ¹ in Yellow* ²	
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Comes on* ¹ in Amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Comes on* ¹ in Red	

*1: Only the indicator on the camera view blinks.

*2: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
 - The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

» Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you put the transmission into **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear view displayed on the audio/information screen when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is captured by a camera.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

⚠ Cross Traffic Monitor*

⚠ CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

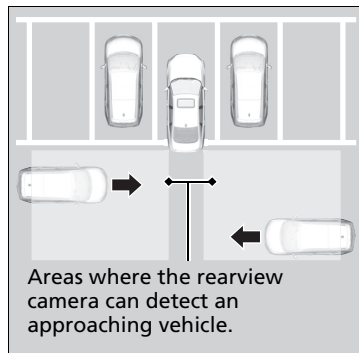
Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

* Not available on all models

■ How the System Works



When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
 - **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 426
 - **Customized Features** P. 290
- The shift lever is in **R**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h or lower.

► Cross Traffic Monitor*

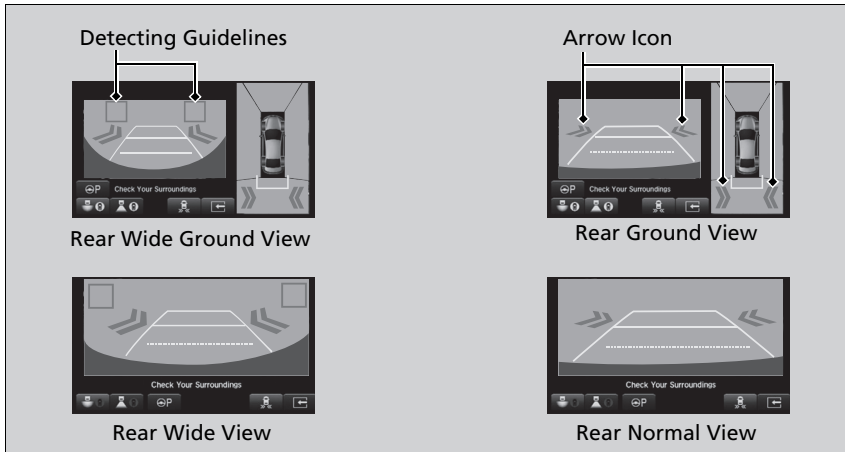
Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- A vehicle, which is parked adjacent to your vehicle, is blocking the rear view.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 and 25 km/h.
- The rearview camera lens is covered with dirt, moisture, snow or other debris.
- A vehicle is approaching in the dark or at night without any exterior lights on, or with the high beam headlights on.
- Your vehicle is exposed to a drastic ambient brightness change.
- Your vehicle is driving in heavy fog.
- The direct sunlight is hitting the camera lens.
- The boot is open.
- The tyres are under- or overinflated.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a poll, a vehicle, and so on.
- There are moving objects, such as flags, near your vehicle.

Heavy load has impacted the area around the rearview camera, resulting in changing the camera angle.

► Have a vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ When the System Detects a Vehicle




While the system is detecting an approaching vehicle, an arrow icon on the side where the vehicle is, and vehicle detecting guidelines (in wide view only) appear.

▶▶ Cross Traffic Monitor*

For proper operation, always keep the rearview camera lens clean wipe away dirt or moisture with a soft moist cloth.

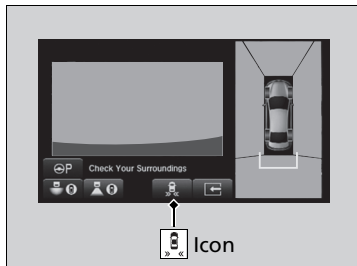
▶▶ When the System Detects a Vehicle


If the  comes on when the shift lever is in **[R]**, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the shift lever in **[R]**, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by tapping the  icon.

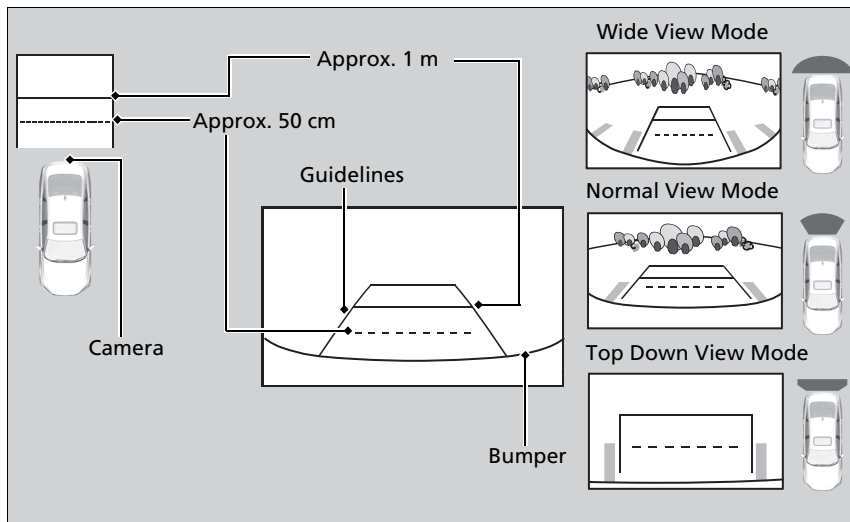
You can also switch the system on and off using the audio/information screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 290

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



About Your Multi-View Rear Camera




The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

* Not available on all models


You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

- : Wide view mode
- : Normal view mode
- : Top down view mode

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode before turning off the engine, the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into **R**, the view mode you were using just before using Top down view mode (Wide view mode or Normal view mode) will be activated.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of **R**, the view mode you were using just before selecting Top down view mode (Wide view mode or Normal view mode) will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.

►► About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

 **Customized Features** P. 290

Fixed Guideline

ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

OFF: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline

ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

OFF: Guidelines do not move.

Multi-View Camera System*

Is a four camera system that views areas commonly known as “blind spots” from different angles, then displays the images on the audio/information screen. This system can be used to:

- Check for obstacles when you are moving in **R**.
 - **Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle** P. 435
- Check the right and left sides of the vehicle while crossing at intersections with poor visibility (obstructed view, etc.).
 - **Checking from the front blind view at intersections** P. 437
- Check for obstacles in front of the vehicle when parking or maneuvering in confined areas.

Multi-View Camera System*

WARNING

Failure to visually assess the area around the vehicle (directly or by use of the mirrors) may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

The areas shown in the multi-view camera system display are limited. The display may not show all pedestrians or other objects around your vehicle.

Do not solely rely only on the multi-view camera system display to assess whether it is safe to move your vehicle.

WARNING

Failure to pay proper attention to your surroundings while driving may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

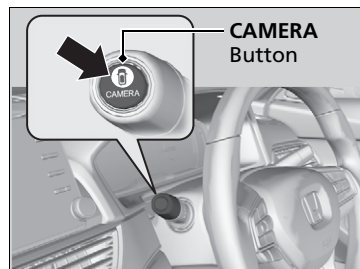
To help mitigate the chances of a collision, only look at the multi-view camera system display when it is safe to do so.

The multi-view camera system does not eliminate all blind spots. The system is for your convenience only.

Always keep the camera lenses clean and free from debris.

* Not available on all models

Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras



■ For frontal views:

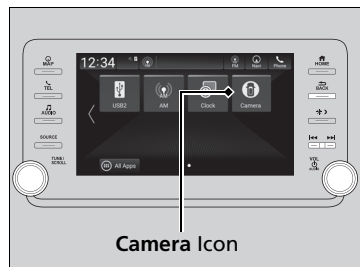
Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon when the vehicle is stationary or moving at 20 km/h or slower. Press the button again to switch camera views.

■ For rear reviews:

Change the shift lever position to **[R]** when the vehicle is stationary. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon again to switch to rear view mode.

You can customize the display setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 290



▶▶ Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras

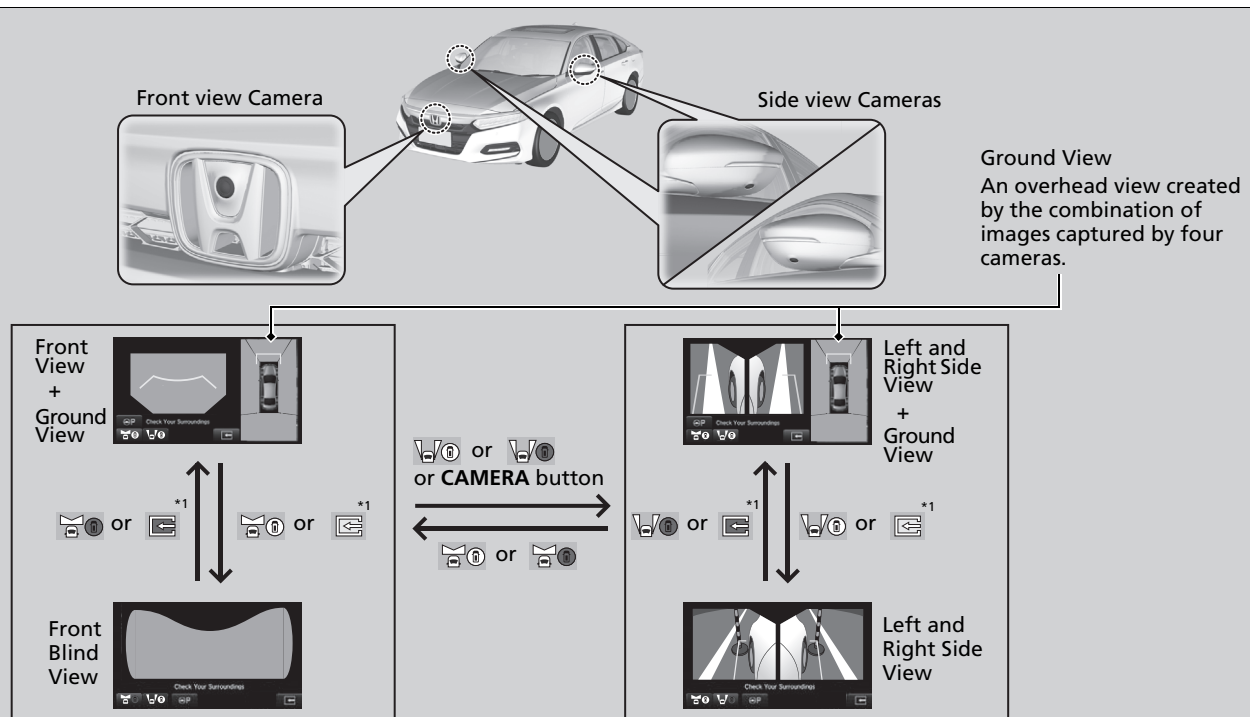
If you press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon while the vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h, the standby screen appears.

When the vehicle speed is reduced below 20 km/h, the screen switches to a multi-view camera system image.

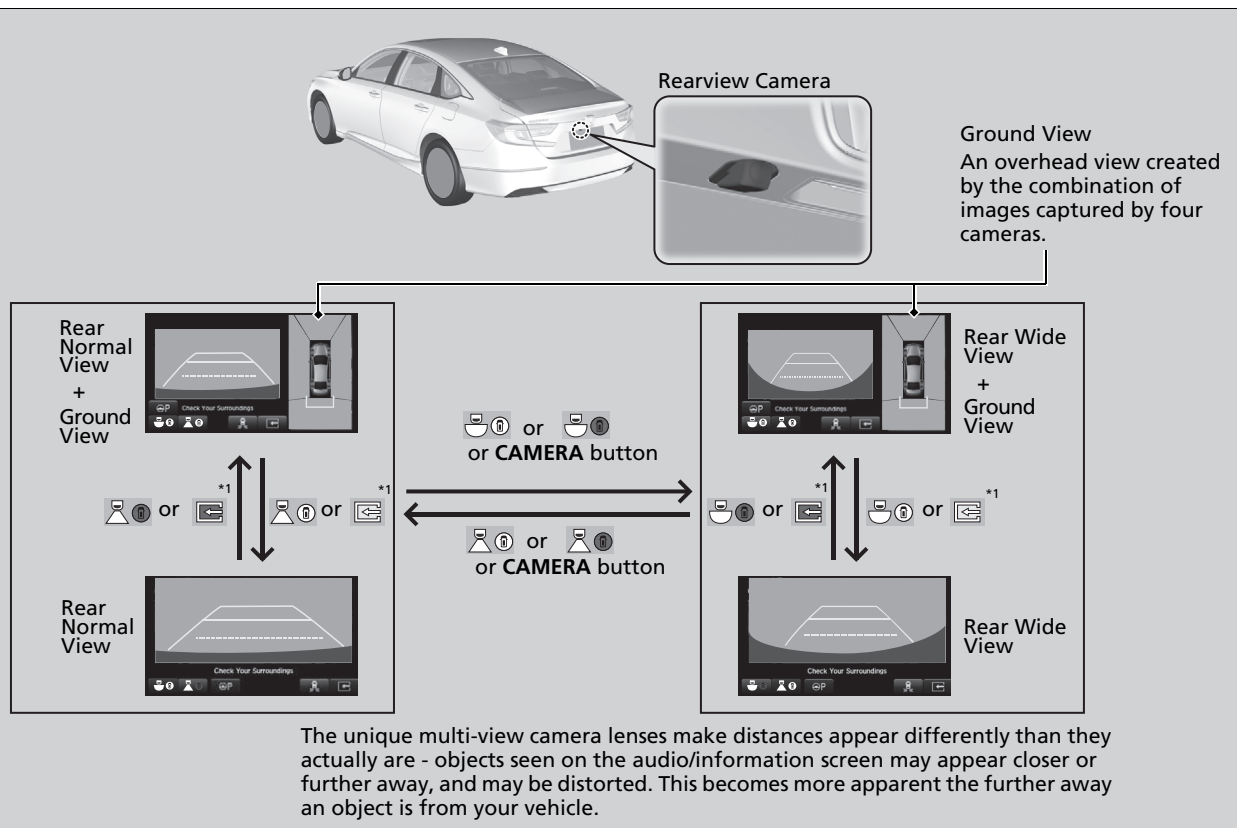
Models with navigation system

The navigation system is disabled when the shift lever position is in **[R]**.

Camera Locations and Images



*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.



*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.

■ Reference Lines and Guide Lines

Following can be displayed when the multi-view camera system is on.

Fixed Guideline: Helps you to get a sense of a distance between your vehicle and the rear surroundings. The distance may appear differently than the actual distance.

Dynamic Guideline: Indicates vehicle direction while the steering wheel is in the current position.

⌘ Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras


The positions/distances indicated by the guide lines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors. The guide lines should be used as a reference only.

The guide lines can be turned on and off using the audio/information screen.

▣ **Customized Features** P. 290

If you turn the guide lines off, they remain off until you turn them back on.

■ Honda Smart Parking Assist System

Selecting  that appears at the bottom of the screen while the multi-view camera images are displayed activates the parking assist system.

The system can be used when you are:

▣ **Honda Smart Parking Assist System*** P. 439

▣ Honda Smart Parking Assist System

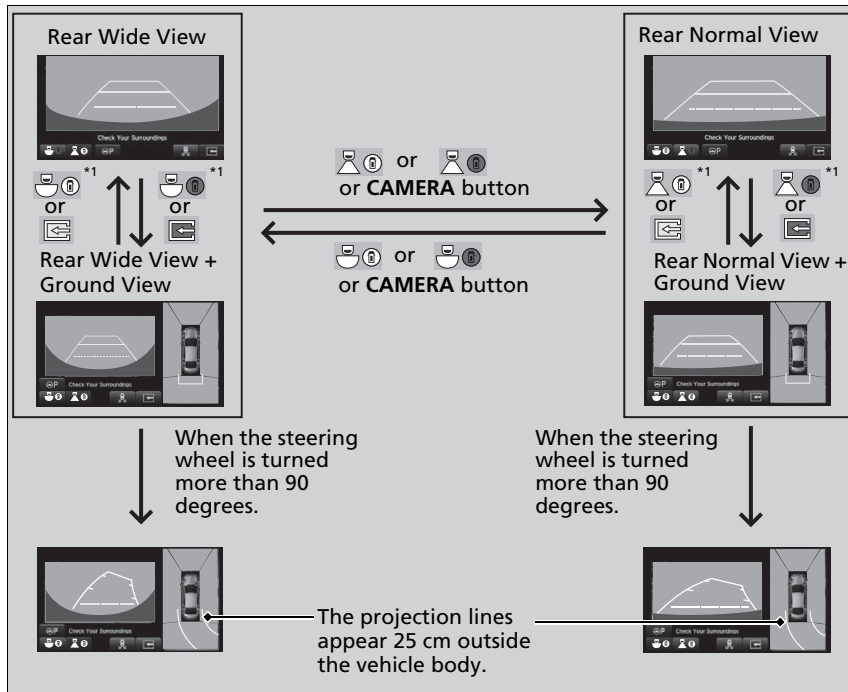
While the system is in use, buzzers and chimes along with a message on the screen guide you on how to use the system.

When the system activates, the parking sensor automatically turns on, and at operation end, it returns to the last state before using the system.

■ Using the Multi-View Camera

■ Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle

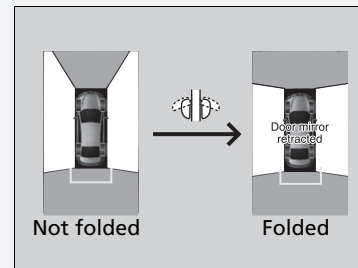
The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift lever position is changed to **R**.



*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.

►► Using the Multi-View Camera

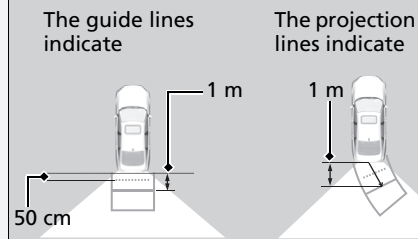
The ground view can be displayed even with the door mirrors folded. However, the viewable angle and blind spot change.



►► Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle

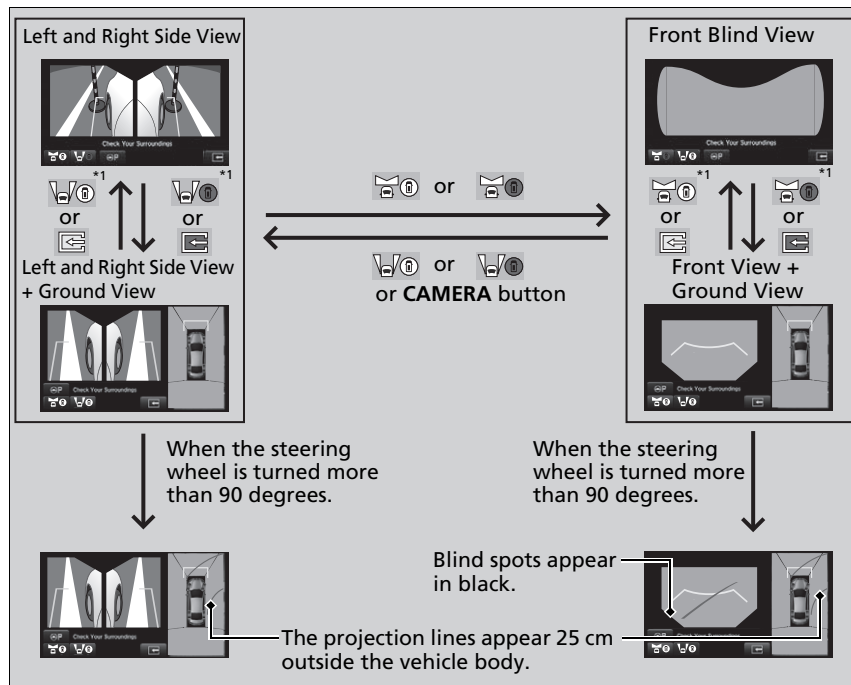
When changing the shift lever position from/to **R**, you may experience a delay in switching between the audio/information screen and a rear view image.

Approximate distances:



■ Checking for the sides of your vehicle

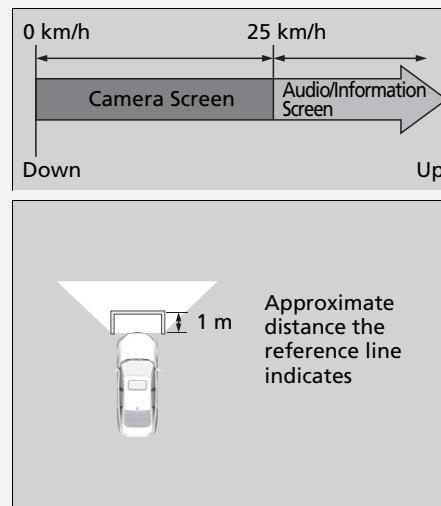
You can display the front ground view screen using all the four cameras for the system. Pressing the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon when the vehicle speed is at below 20 km/h changes the image as follows.



*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.

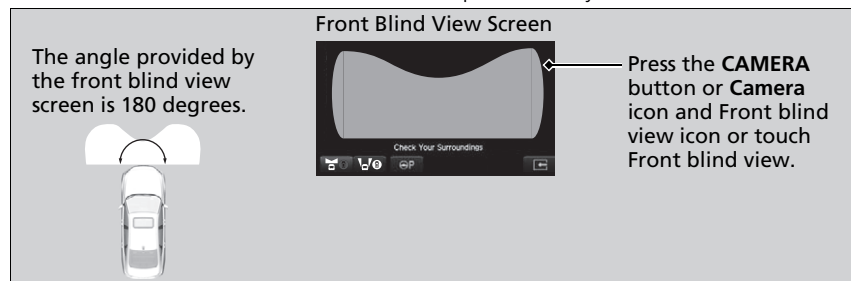
▶▶ Checking for the sides of your vehicle

When the vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h, the front or side view on the screen automatically switches to the audio information screen.



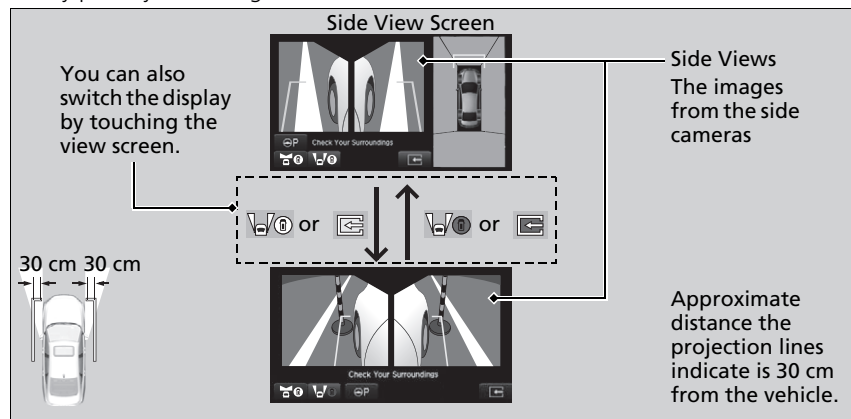
■ Checking from the front blind view at intersections

The front blind view screen is useful when you need to check for vehicles crossing from either direction at an intersection with poor visibility.



■ Checking the sides of your vehicle

The side view screens are convenient when you pull over at a curb or tollbooth, or slowly pass by oncoming vehicles on a narrow road.



☒ Checking from the front blind view at intersections

The front blind view is a wide-angled view. The image will be largely distorted, and objects may appear closer or more distant than they actually are.

☒ Checking for the sides of your vehicle

When the door mirrors are folded, the side views cannot be displayed.

Multi-View Camera/Honda Smart Parking Assist System Limitations

The system may not work properly under the following conditions.

Conditions		Solutions
The projection line is not accurate.		The position is automatically corrected.
The images may not appear clearly when:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• You activate the system in bad weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc.) or in the dark.• Camera temperatures are high.• A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.• You drive into the sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk.)	Do not use the multi-view camera system but rely only on visual confirmation until the conditions allow the system to work properly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• A camera lens is covered with dirt, moisture, or debris.• A camera lens is scratched.	Clean camera lenses with a soft cloth moisturised with water, mild detergent or glass cleaner.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The audio/information screen is dirty.	Wipe off the screen using a soft dry cloth.
A camera angle is altered.	A camera or the area around the camera has been severely impacted.	Do not use the multi-view camera or the Honda smart parking assist system and contact a dealer.
An error message is displayed while the multi-view camera system is in use.		
The image does not come on the screen when you press the CAMERA button or Camera icon on the audio/information screen and the vehicle is moving at 20 km/h or slower.		Do not use the Honda smart parking assist system and contact a dealer.
The Honda smart parking assist system may have a problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The image does not come on the screen.• The mode icon does not blink.• The beeper does not sound.	

What is the Honda Smart Parking Assist System?

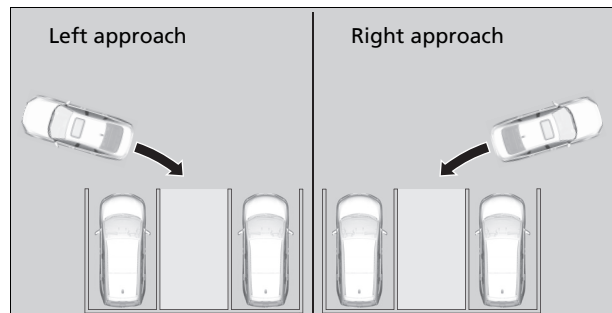
The Honda smart parking assist system helps ease the burden of parking by steering the vehicle when the driver is reversing into a perpendicular space, or reversing into or pulling out of a parallel space.

If you are pulling or reversing into a parking space at a speed less than approximately 10km/h, the sonar sensors situated in the front or back bumper will detect any objects in the path of the vehicle. If another vehicle or a wall is detected, the brakes will be engaged automatically to help you to avoid a collision.

The camera detects the lines of the parking space and the system determines the route to follow to park the vehicle. Note that the system will not detect an obstacle, a wall, or another vehicle situated to either side of the vehicle, even when the parking instructions and parking guide lines are displayed. Also be aware that the system detects only objects in the path of the vehicle. If the vehicle is moving away from an object, that object will not be detected.

The system can be used in the following situations:

Reversing into a perpendicular space marked with lines



* Not available on all models

Continued

Honda Smart Parking Assist System*

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely too much on the Honda smart parking assist system.

Neglecting to visually confirm the surroundings and operate your vehicle while parking can lead to a crash, in which you and others can be seriously injured or killed.

Always visually confirm the surroundings, and take appropriate means to avoid a crash while parking.

To move the vehicle forward and backward, and to brake, the driver himself/herself must operate the vehicle.

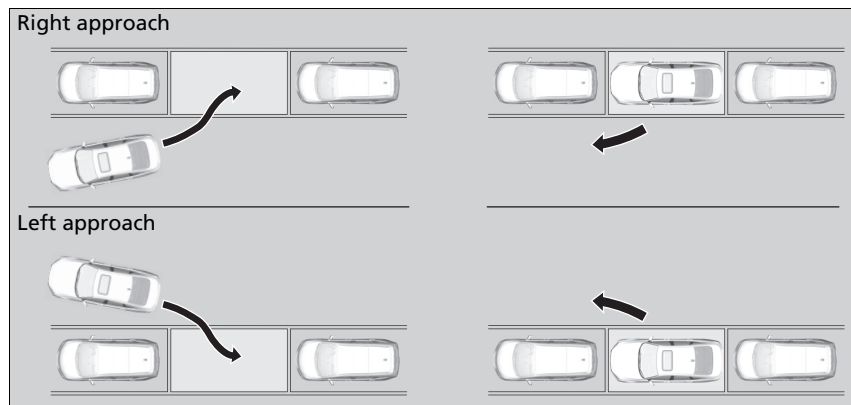
⚠ WARNING

Do not use the Honda smart parking assist system when the conditions do not allow the system to work properly.

Improper use of the system can result in a crash.

Use only on a flat, non-slippery surface with appropriate parking lines where the cameras can clearly capture the surrounding images.

■ Reversing into or pulling out of a parallel space marked with lines



▶▶ Honda Smart Parking Assist System*

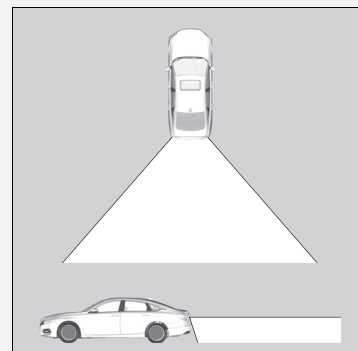
For information on how to use the sonar sensors, refer to the following page:

▶ **Sonar Sensors** P. 465


Once the system is activated, messages appear on the screen and a buzzer periodically sounds to assist the driver. In addition, indicators light up on the screen to show the status of the system.


The screen will show that the vehicle is completely parallel to the parking lines; however, this may not be the actual case. Never rely on the screen for an accurate depiction of the position of the vehicle: Use it only for a general estimate.

The rear view displayed on the screen is limited to the range shown below. When backing up, also use the mirrors to assess the area around the vehicle, and remember to check all blind spots.



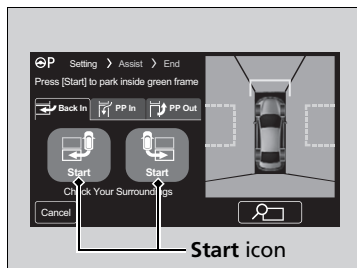
How to use the Honda Smart Parking Assist System

First, press **CAMERA** button to activate the multi-view camera, then select  on the screen to activate the system. After that, select Parking Mode and then follow the steps below as well as the on-screen and a buzzer sound.

- ▶ If you intend to back into a parking space, make sure the transmission is in **[D]** before you select .
- ▶ If an object is detected in the travel path of the vehicle before you activate the system, the start switch will light up in grey, and the system will remain deactivated.

Reversing into a parking space (parallel or perpendicular)

1. Once you find an available parking space, continue to move the vehicle forward until the green frame displayed on the left or the right side of the screen is superimposed over the image of the lines of your target parking space.



2. With the brake pedal depressed and the vehicle in **[D]**, press the **Start** icon that corresponds to the side from which you intend to enter the parking space.
3. Operate the vehicle as instructed.
 - ▶ Take care to insure that you stay within the blue guide lines and the green frame.
 - ▶ If the steering wheel moves while the vehicle is stopped, keep the brakes engaged and wait for instructions.

4. A buzzer will sound to inform you that the operation is complete.

■ Pulling out of a parallel parking space

After you have selected Parking Mode, follow the instructions.

If an error occurs during a parking operation, an alarm will sound, an error message will be displayed, and the system will deactivate.

➤ When the System is Cancelled during Operation P. 461

If the sensors detect a person or another object crossing the travel path of the vehicle, an alarm will sound and the system will deactivate temporarily. The system will reactivate as soon as the alarm stops.

➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446

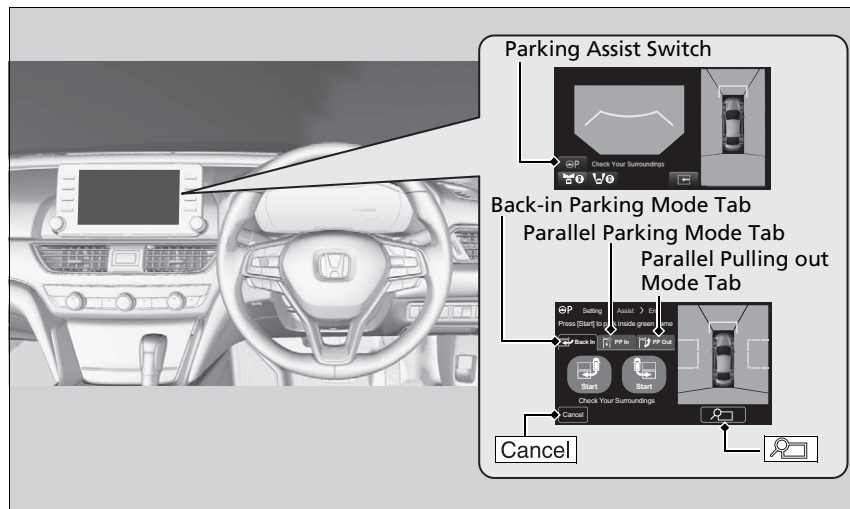
➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449

➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453


■ Operation Switch and Screen Display

Use the touch-screen switches to turn the system on or off, or to switch between parking modes.

Use the green frame on the screen as a guide to position the vehicle within proper range of your target parking space.




⌘ Operation Switch and Screen Display


If you need to cancel the operation, press the  switch or the **CAMERA** button. You will then be taken back to the multi-view camera screen.

■ Parking assist switch


: Turn the parking assist system on.


: Activate the reverse perpendicular parking mode (left approach).


: Activate the reverse perpendicular parking mode (right approach).


: Activate the parallel parking mode (left approach).

: Activate the parallel parking mode (right approach).

: Activate the mode for pulling out of a parallel parking space (left exit).

: Activate the mode for pulling out of a parallel parking space (right exit).

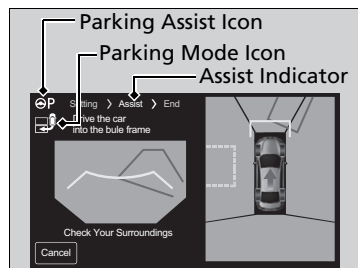
: Select this icon or press the **CAMERA** button to cancel the system operation. The display returns to the multi-view camera image.

: Select this icon to turn on or off the function that automatically recognises the targeted parking space lines.

■ Frame for target parking space

The two green frames displayed opposite each other are used as guide to help you determine when to stop the vehicle so that it is within proper range of the parking space in which you want to park the vehicle.

■ Other icons and indicators



During parking assist, the parking mode icon flashes, and the parking assist icon and the assist indicator light up in white.

▶▶ Frame for target parking space

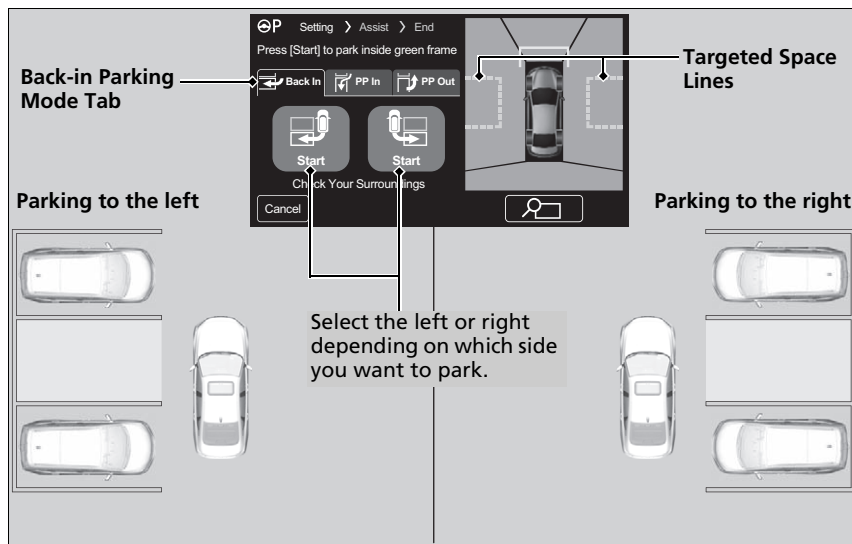
If the parking assist icon lights up in orange, there may be a problem with the system. Cancel the operation and consult with a Honda dealer.

▶ **Error Messages** P. 459

■ Buzzer

Once you have activated the system, messages will appear on the screen and a buzzer will periodically sound to assist you with the operation. Also, indicators on the screen will light up to indicate the status of the system.

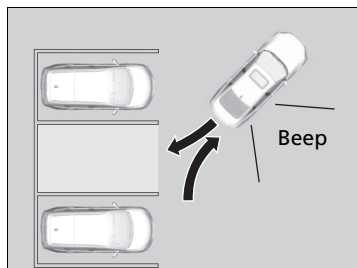
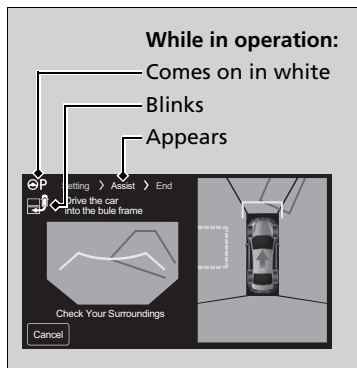
■ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines



1. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon, then select or press and hold the **CAMERA** button. Select the **Back-in parking mode** tab.
2. Move the vehicle forward perpendicular to the parking space until the targeted parking space lines frame the space you are about to park into. Stop your vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal fully. While keeping the shift lever in **[D]**, select Left or Right, depending on the direction your vehicle is reversing to.

▶▶ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

This system is not a substitute for your vehicle control but for your convenience only.



4. The steering wheel automatically turns.
 - ▶ Place your hands on the steering wheel, and follow the messages respectively appear on the screen.
 - ▶ Do not move your vehicle while the steering wheel is in motion.
5. While the beeper sounds intermittently, forward your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ If the length of the intermittent beeps becomes shorter, slow down.
 - ▶ Depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the system.
6. A single long beep sounds along with a message. Stop the vehicle.
 - ▶ The beep stops. Follow the next message by shifting to **[R]**.
 - ▶ Make sure your vehicle stays within the blue frame that appears on the screen. If your vehicle goes out of the blue frame, the system is cancelled. Repeat from the step 1.

Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel that moves automatically can cause serious injury to your hands or fingers.

Be careful when placing your hands on the steering wheel while the Honda smart parking assist system is in operation.

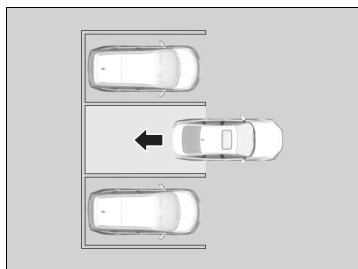
For proper operation, make sure to stop your vehicle when the targeted parking space lines are framing the parking space.

The system cancels operation five minutes after you have selected the left or right side for parking.

The beeper sounds once and the system cancels when:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h in **[D]** or 7 km/h in **[R]**.
- You operate the steering wheel.
- You set the parking brake.
- VSA is turned off.
- Your vehicle is overly veered off tracks.

You do not change the shift lever position in accordance with the message on the screen.



7. The steering wheel automatically turns. While the beeper sounds intermittently, reverse your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.

- ▶ If the vehicle does not stop even after a buzzer sounds or the message "Stop Vehicle" is displayed, cancel the system. Note that the buzzer will continue to sound and the message will remain displayed.

If the sonar sensor detects another vehicle or a wall within close proximity of vehicle during steering operation, the brakes will be automatically engaged as a safety precaution. After approximately two seconds, the brakes will be released.

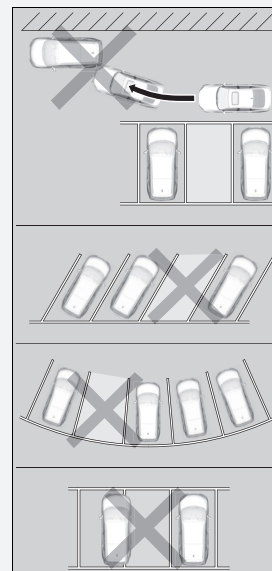
8. Follow the next message. You may need to move the vehicle forward and backward several times in accordance with the setting you customized (**Wide area mode** or **Narrow area mode**).

🔧 **Customized Features** P. 290

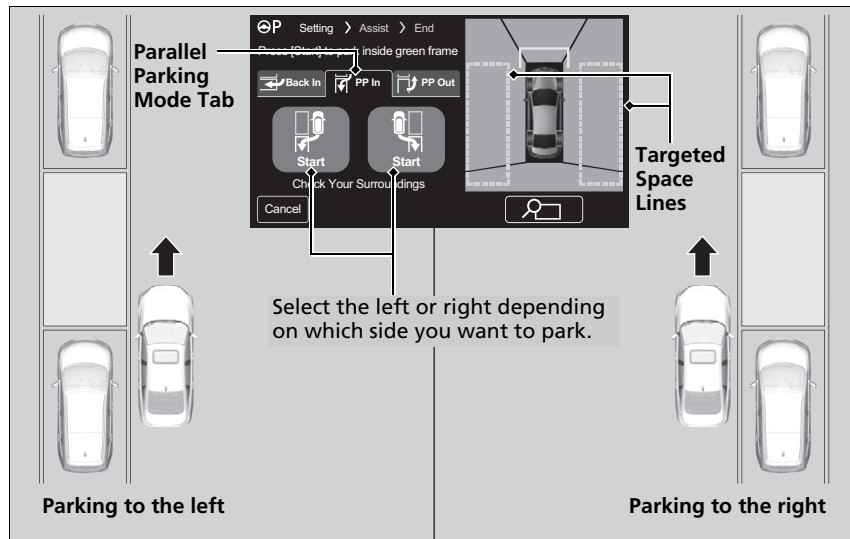
- ▶ When parking is completed, you will hear a continuous beep. Stop the vehicle, move the shift lever to **[P]**, and turn off the engine.
- ▶ If you continue reversing the vehicle after the beep, another beep sounds, notifying that the system is deactivated.

🔧 **Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines**

The Honda smart parking assist system can be useful only when there are no obstacles around the parking space, when the parking space is in a rectangular shape with straight parking marks and when vehicles in the next parking spaces are within the spaces. Use your own judgment to determine whether it is suitable to use the system for your target parking space. Also, never use the system for the following parking spaces.



Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines



1. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon, then select **⊗P** or press and hold the **CAMERA** button. Select the **Parallel parking mode** tab.
2. Move the vehicle forward parallel to the parking space until the targeted parking space lines frame the space you are about to park into. Stop your vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal fully. While keeping the shift lever in **D**, select Left or Right, depending on which side you are parking to.

Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel that moves automatically can cause serious injury to your hands or fingers.

Be careful when placing your hands on the steering wheel while the Honda smart parking assist system is in operation.

For proper operation, make sure to stop your vehicle when the targeted parking space lines are framing the parking space.

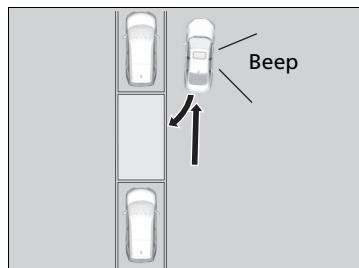
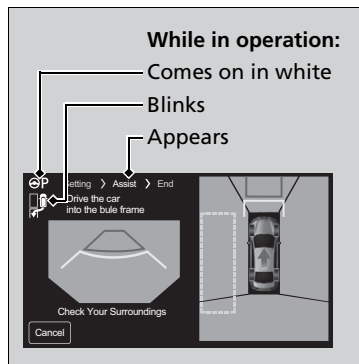
The system cancels operation five minutes after you have selected the left or right side for parking.

The beeper sounds once and the system cancels when:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h in **D** or 7 km/h in **R**.
- You operate the steering wheel.
- You set the parking brake.
- VSA is turned off.
- Your vehicle is overly veered off track.

You do not change the shift lever position in accordance with the message on the screen.

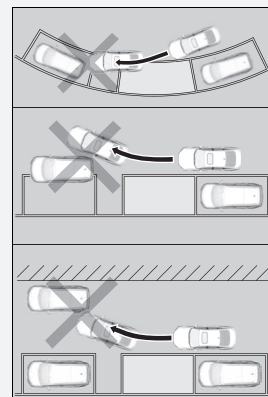
Continued



- The steering wheel automatically turns.
 - Place your hands on the steering wheel, and follow the messages respectively appear on the screen.
 - Do not move your vehicle while the steering wheel is in motion.
- While the beeper sounds intermittently, forward your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.
 - If the length of the intermittent beeps becomes shorter, slow down.
 - Depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the system.
- A single long beep sounds along with a message. Stop the vehicle.
 - The beep stops. Follow the next message by shifting to **R**.
 - Make sure your vehicle stays within the blue frame that appears on the screen. If your vehicle goes out of the blue frame, the system is cancelled. Repeat from the step 1.

▶▶ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

The Honda smart parking assist system can be useful only when there are no obstacles around the parking space, when the parking space is in a rectangular shape with straight parking marks and when vehicles in the next parking spaces are within the spaces. Use your own judgment to determine whether it is suitable to use the system for your target parking space. Also, never use the system for the following parking spaces.



7. The steering wheel automatically turns. While the beeper sounds intermittently, reverse your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.

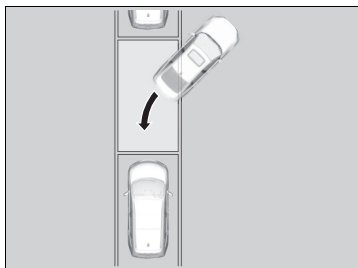
▶ If the vehicle does not stop even after a buzzer sounds or the message "Stop Vehicle" is displayed, cancel the system. Note that the buzzer will continue to sound and the message will remain displayed.

If the sonar sensor detects another vehicle or a wall within close proximity of vehicle during steering operation, the brakes will be automatically engaged as a safety precaution. After approximately two seconds, the brakes will be released.

8. Follow the next message. You may need to move the vehicle forward and backward several times.

▶ When parking is completed, you will hear a continuous beep. Stop the vehicle, move the shift lever to **[P]**, and turn off the engine.

▶ If you continue reversing the vehicle after the beep, another beep sounds, notifying that the system is deactivated.



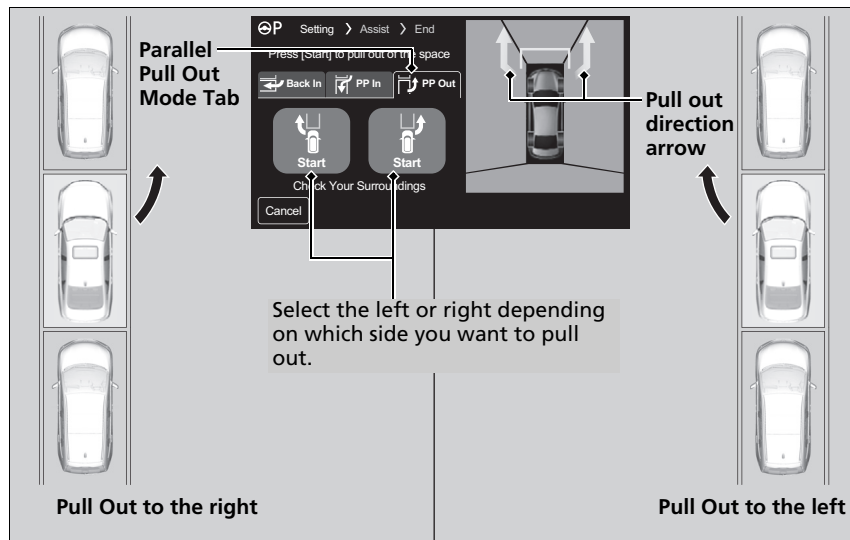
■ For the Smart Parking Assist System to Work Properly

The following conditions are not suitable for the system's proper operation.

Determine if the system can be used when:

- The vehicle is on an incline.
- The vehicle is too far or too close to the parking space.
- The surface is bumpy or slippery or is covered with snow.
- The parking lines are worn-out or difficult to see.
- The parking space has no parking lines but is marked with objects, such as ropes, blocks and tiles.
- The parking lines are too wide or narrow.
- Varied lines other than the parking lines are visible on a surface.
- Reflected lights/images on the surface are hitting the cameras.
- The direct sunlight is hitting the cameras.
- The parking space is too dark, partially dark or in the shades of the parked vehicles.
- The weather is bad.

Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space



1. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon, then select or press and hold the **CAMERA** button. Select the **Parallel Pull Out mode** tab.
2. Select the Left or Right, depending on which side you are pulling out to.
3. Assist starts with going forward or backward, depending on the detection distance.

Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space

⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel that moves automatically can cause serious injury to your hands or fingers.

Be careful when placing your hands on the steering wheel while the Honda smart parking assist system is in operation.

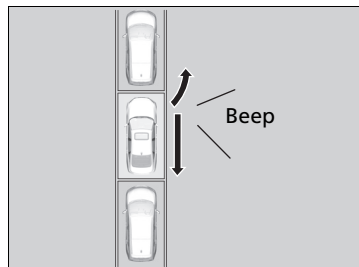
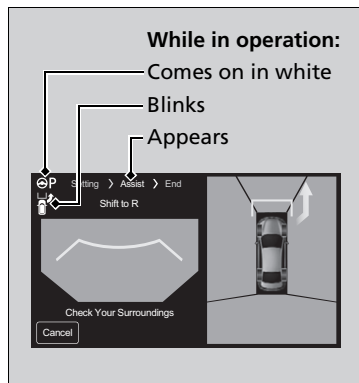
The system cancels operation five minutes after you have selected the left or right side for parking.

The beeper sounds once and the system cancels when:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h in **[D]** or 7 km/h in **[R]**.
- You operate the steering wheel.
- You set the parking brake.
- VSA is turned off.
- Your vehicle is overly veered off track.
- Parking sensor is turned off.
- You operate the shift lever position changing many times.

You do not change the shift lever position in accordance with the message on the screen.

Continued



4. Move the vehicle backward with centre steering wheel position until the **Stop the car** message appears. If the assist start with going forward, skip this step and go to step 5.

5. Move the shift lever to **[D]**.

6. The steering wheel automatically turns.
 - ▶ Place your hands on the steering wheel, and follow the messages respectively appear on the screen.
 - ▶ Do not move your vehicle while the steering wheel is in motion.

7. While the beeper sounds, forward your vehicle slowly.

Occasionally depress the brake pedal.

- ▶ If the length of the intermittent beeps becomes shorter, slow down.
- ▶ Depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the system.

8. A single long beep sounds along with a message. Stop the vehicle.

- ▶ The beep stops. Follow the next message by moving the shift lever to **[R]**.

▶▶ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space

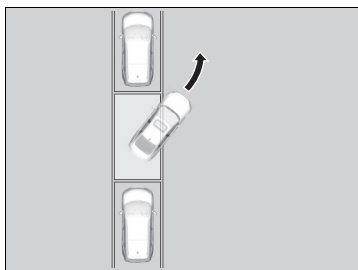
The Honda smart parking assist system can be useful only when there are no obstacles around the parking space, when the parking space is in a rectangular shape with straight parking marks and when vehicles in the next parking spaces are within the spaces.

The pull-out feature will work providing that, at commencement, the road side of the vehicle directly in front of your vehicle is not extending into the road approximately one meter beyond the same side of your vehicle.

If two cars are double parked in front of yours, the pull-out feature does not work.

If the combined distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front and behind is very short or a person or object is between your vehicle or the other vehicle(s), the pull-out start icon will appear grayed out and the feature will not activate.

Once the pull-out feature is activated, it will continue to operate even if the parking sensors detect a person or any object in their path.



9. The steering wheel automatically turns. While the beeper sounds intermittently, reverse your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ If the vehicle does not stop even after a buzzer sounds or the message "Stop Vehicle" is displayed, cancel the system. Note that the buzzer will continue to sound and the message will remain displayed.
If the sonar sensor detects another vehicle or a wall within close proximity of vehicle during steering operation, the brakes will be automatically engaged as a safety precaution. After approximately two seconds, the brakes will be released.
10. Follow the next message. You may need to move the vehicle forward and backward several times.
 - ▶ When leaving is complete, you will hear a beeper sounds once.

▶▶ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space

If a vehicle on the road is approaching from behind, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.

■ For the Honda Smart Parking Assist System to Work Properly

The following conditions are not suitable for the system's proper operation.

Determine if the system can be used when:

- The vehicle is on an incline.
- The vehicle is too far or too close to the parking space.
- The surface is bumpy or slippery or is covered with snow.
- The parking lines are worn-out or difficult to see.
- The parking space has no parking lines but is marked with objects, such as ropes, blocks and tiles.
- The parking lines are too wide or narrow.
- Varied lines other than the parking lines are visible on a surface.
- Reflected lights/images on the surface are hitting the cameras.
- The direct sunlight is hitting the cameras.
- The parking space is too dark, partially dark or in the shades of the parked vehicles.
- The weather is bad.
- The obstacles are on the parking space.

■ Unsuitable parking spaces for Honda Smart Parking Assist System

The following parking spaces are not suitable when using the Honda smart parking assist system.

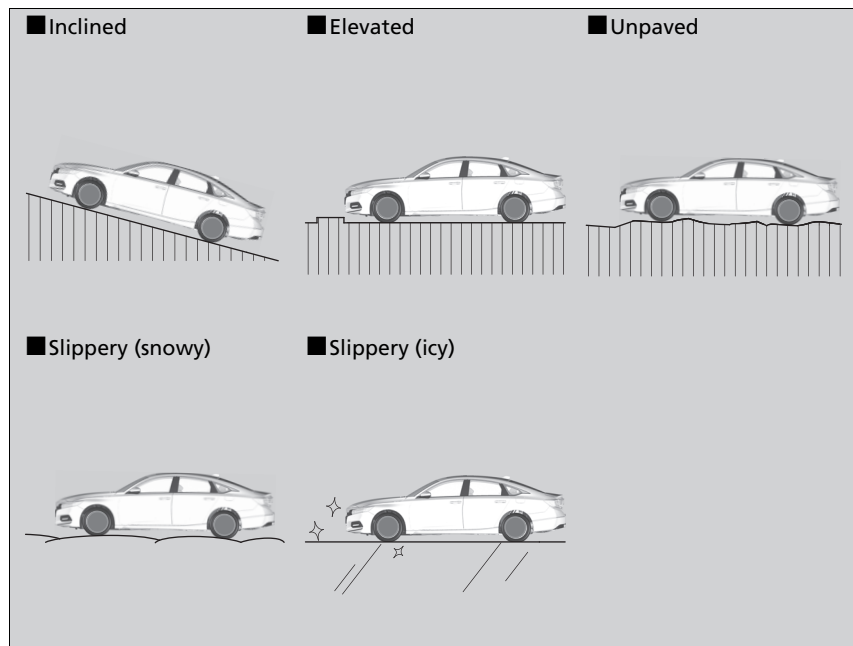
■ Common spaces that are unsuitable

It is not advisable to use the system to park in an inclined space or one the surface of which is uneven or slippery. Depending on the degree of the incline, the driver may not be able to move the vehicle forward or back with light application of the accelerator pedal. On an uneven or slippery surface, the driver may not be able to apply steady easy acceleration.



Carefully consider the condition of the parking space and use your own judgment to determine whether the space is appropriate or not for parking.

⚠ Unsuitable parking spaces for Honda Smart Parking Assist System

When moving the vehicle backward or forward on a steep downward slope, be careful not to apply too much pressure to the accelerator pedal.





Error Messages

If  comes on in orange, the Honda smart parking assist system has a problem. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If you do not see  in orange, you may find a solution from a message on the screen.

When the System Does Not Activate

A message may appear. Follow the corresponding solution, then start the system again.

Messages	Causes	Solutions
Check parking sensors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a problem with the parking sensors. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Unable to assist not enough space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parking sensors couldn't find enough space to assist. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not use the system. Park manually.
Rear parking sensors are turned off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rear parking sensors are turned off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn on the rear parking sensors.  Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 422
Turn on parking sensor system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All parking sensors are turned off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn on the parking sensors.  Parking sensor system on and off P. 418
Align green frame to parking space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Your vehicle is overly veered off track. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Framing your parking space with the targeted lines.
Close doors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A door is open. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure to close all doors.

Messages	Causes	Solutions
Extend door mirrors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Door mirrors are folded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the door mirror folding button to unfold the door mirrors.
Switch VSA ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> VSA is deactivated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the VSA system on.
Shift to D before use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The shift lever is in a position other than D. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the shift lever to D.
Shift from R to use assist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The shift lever is in R. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the shift lever in a position other than R.
Stop car to use assist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Your vehicle is moving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the brake pedal.
Loosen grip of steering wheel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive force is applied to the steering wheel, preventing it from automatic operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Try not to hold onto the steering wheel, but place your hands lightly on it. Make sure the steering wheel is in the centre position.
Centre steering wheel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The steering wheel is not in the centre position. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Return the steering wheel to the centre position.
Release parking brake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The parking brake is set. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Release the parking brake.
Press [Start] to pull out of the space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You stay on the Start switch screen of the Parallel Pull Out Mode. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Start switch, depending on which side you are pulling out to.
Decelerate before use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When forwarding: The vehicle speed has exceeded 10 km/h. When reversing: The vehicle speed has exceeded 7 km/h. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Use the brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed. Or, park your vehicle manually.
Press [Start] to park inside green frame	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You stay on the Start switch screen of the Back-in Parking and Parallel Parking Mode. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Start switch, depending on which side you are parking to.
Turn off ACC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The ACC with Low Speed Follow is on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn off the ACC with Low Speed Follow, then press the switch again.

■ When the System is Cancelled during Operation

A beep and a message notify you. Follow the corresponding solution.

Messages	Causes	Solutions
Park assist cancelled Cancel switch pressed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The CAMERA button is pressed or Cancel is selected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
Park assist cancelled Steering wheel operated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You try to operate the steering wheel during its automatic operations. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Do not hold onto the steering wheel. Gently grip the steering wheel and follow its movement. Or, park your vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
Park assist cancelled Gear lever operated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When forwarding: The shift lever is moved out of [D]. When reversing: The shift lever is moved out of [R]. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453

Messages	Causes	Solutions
Park assist cancelled Parking sensor system is turned OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parking sensors are turned off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Restart the parking assist. The parking sensors automatically turns on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
Park assist cancelled VSA switched OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VSA is deactivated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn the VSA system on. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
Park assist cancelled Speed too high	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When forwarding: The vehicle speed has exceeded 10 km/h. When reversing: The vehicle speed has exceeded 7 km/h. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Use the brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed. Or, park you vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
Park assist cancelled Passed over stop point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Your vehicle has passed by the system's designated stopping point for more than 0.5 m. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449

Messages	Causes	Solutions
Park assist cancelled Park assist cannot be completed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The vehicle is on a surface tyres are likely to spin, making it difficult for the system to control the steering wheel. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not use the system. Park manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When forwarding: The shift lever is moved out of D. When reversing: The shift lever is moved out of R. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> VSA is activated. 	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The system time-out. Five minutes has elapsed since the system is in operation. 	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Your vehicle is overly veered off track. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wait for a while until the system cools down. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The EPS temperature is high. 	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The battery needs servicing. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The battery may need to be recharged or replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Messages	Causes	Solutions
Park assist cancelled Unable to pull out from parallel space	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The engine has stopped.• You operate the shift position changing many times.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Restart the engine. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
Park assist cancelled Parking assist unavailable	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The engine has stopped.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Restart the engine. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. ➤ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 446 ➤ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 449 ➤ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space P. 453
Parking assist failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The system failure.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Park your vehicle manually. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

If any of the following problems occur while you are using the Honda smart parking assist system, press **CAMERA** button to cancel the operation and have your vehicle checked by a Honda dealer:

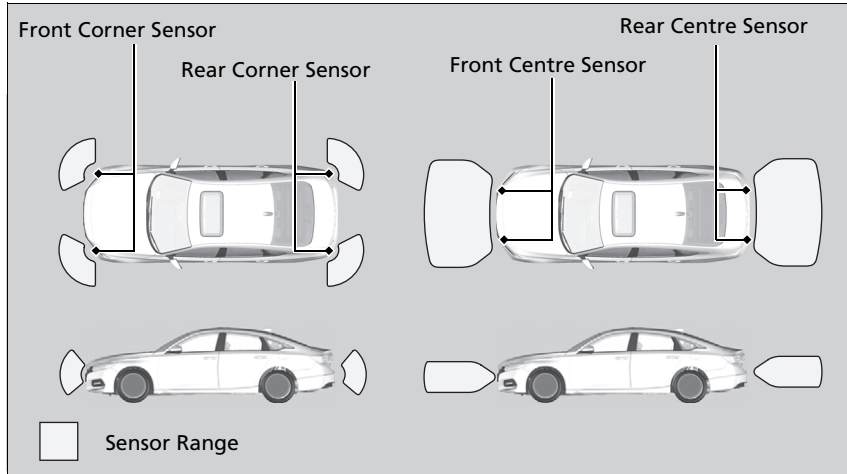
- The image captured by camera disappears.
- The parking mode icon stops illuminating.
- The system buzzer stops working.

Furthermore, if you are traveling under 20km/h and the image captured by the camera disappears, there may be a problem with the camera. Have your vehicle checked by a Honda dealer.

Sonar Sensors

The sonar sensors are situated in the front and rear bumpers.

■ Location and range of sensors



▣ Sonar Sensors

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:

- Place stickers, accessories, or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.

Consult with a Honda dealer if:

- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.

The system may not function normally after:

- The bumper has made contact with a parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in front or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

If the system is not working normally, consult with a Honda dealer.

In the following circumstances the sonar sensors may not be able to detect an obstacle, and as a result, the system may not work properly.

■ **Example of cases when a sonar sensor cannot properly detect another vehicle or a wall due to state of the vehicle.**

- The sonar sensor is dirty (covered with snow, ice, mud, etc.).
- The body of the vehicle is too hot or too cold.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load.

■ **Example of cases when a sonar sensor cannot properly detect another vehicle or a wall due to conditions outside the vehicle.**

- The weather conditions are poor.
- The surface of the road is bumpy, grassy, or has elevated or depressed sections.
- A device emitting ultrasonic waves is within the vicinity of the vehicle.

■ **Example of cases when a sonar sensor cannot properly detect another vehicle or a wall due to other conditions.**

- The object is covered with snow or made of cloth or sponge or another material that can absorb sound easily.
- The object is very thin or low to the ground.
- The object is very close to the bumper.
- The object suddenly enters the travel path of the vehicle and remains in motion.
- The object is situated at an angle to the vehicle.

▶▶ Sonar Sensors

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Fuel Information

Fuel recommendation

Thai models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

Pakistani models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

Thai models

Immediately after refueling, especially when you have switched to another type of fuel, the engine and fuel system may go into a compensating period for fuel performance.

It will be required to drive moderately at a constant speed for about 10 minutes, without rapid acceleration when traffic allows. In this period, you may notice engine knocking.

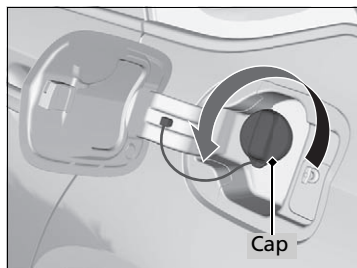
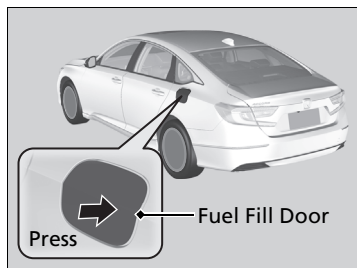
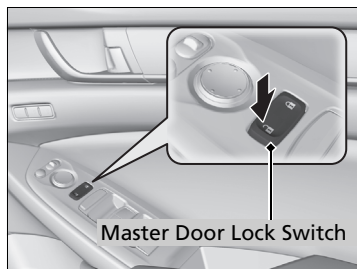
Models for other countries

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 56 L**

How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.

▶ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

P. 161

4. Press the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click.
5. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

▶▶ How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

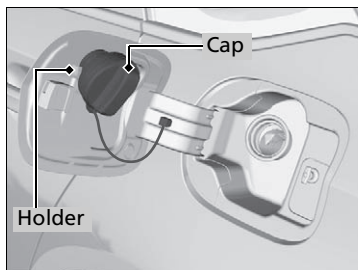
Use the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.

The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Continued



6. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
7. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
 - When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
8. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 482

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
 - 📖 **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 488
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.
- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Oil Monitor System. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

» Turbo Engine Vehicle

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information on replacement timing.

» **Oil Monitor System** P. 477

» **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 488

The temperature gauge pointer is at the upper level when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	474
Safety When Performing Maintenance	475
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service	476

Oil Monitor System

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information	477
---	-----

Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Record	485
--------------------------	-----

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet	486
Opening the Bonnet	487

Recommended Engine Oil	488
Oil Check	490
Adding Engine Oil	491
Engine Coolant	492
Transmission Fluid	494
Brake Fluid	495
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	496
Replacing Light Bulbs	497
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	506
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	

Checking Tyres	509
Wear Indicators	511

Tyre Service Life	511
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	512
Tyre Rotation	513
Snow Traction Devices	514
Battery	516

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Button Battery	519
------------------------------------	-----

Climate Control System Maintenance

Cleaning

Interior Care	522
Exterior Care	524

Accessories and Modifications

Accessories	528
Modifications	529

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 482

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
🔧 **Brake Fluid** P. 495
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
🔧 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 509
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
🔧 **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 497
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
🔧 **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 506

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book*.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

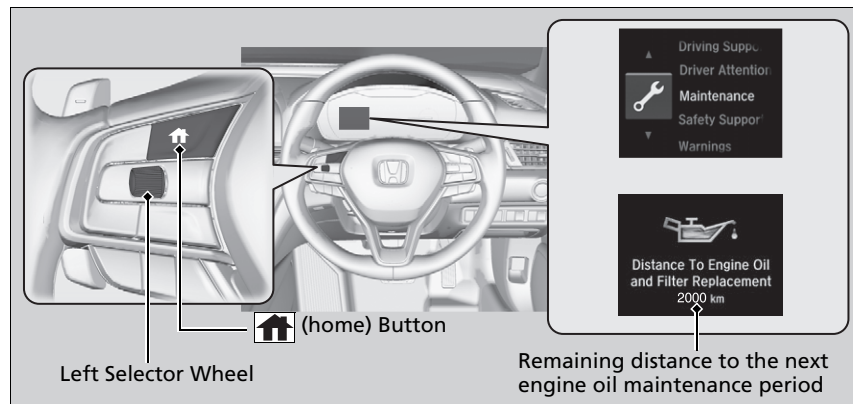
The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.



If the remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period is 1,500 km or less, you will see the oil monitor system messages every time you set the power mode to ON. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.

You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until  is displayed.

▣ Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

The type and content of the maintenance service items are as follows:









Replace engine oil
Replace engine oil and oil filter









Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
The maintenance service item and the remaining distance appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.

The system message indicator (i) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

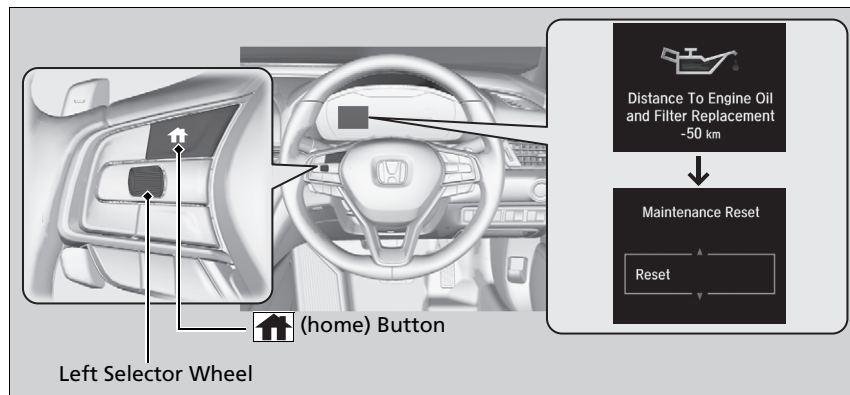
Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface



Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
NORMAL 	NORMAL  	When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.	
SERVICE DUE SOON  Engine Oil Replacement Due Soon  Engine Oil and Filter Replacement Due Soon	SERVICE DUE SOON  	When the remaining life of the engine oil, or the remaining life of the engine oil and oil filter is 1,500 km or less, the respective indicator appears.	The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil are approaching the end of their life.

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
<div>SERVICE DUE NOW</div> <div> Engine Oil Replacement Due Now</div> <div> Engine Oil and Filter Replacement Due Now</div>	<div>SERVICE DUE NOW</div> <div> Distance To Engine Oil Replacement 490 km</div> <div> Distance To Engine Oil and Filter Replacement 490 km</div>	When the remaining life of the engine oil, or the remaining life of the engine oil and oil filter is 500 km or less, the respective indicator appears.	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
<div>SERVICE OVER DUE</div> <div> Engine Oil Replacement Overdue</div> <div> Engine Oil and Filter Replacement Overdue</div>	<div>SERVICE OVER DUE</div> <div> Distance To Engine Oil Replacement -50 km</div> <div> Distance To Engine Oil and Filter Replacement -50 km</div>	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have passed their service life.	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.

Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until  is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the engine oil life display.
5. Press the left selector wheel to enter the reset mode.
6. Roll the left selector wheel select a **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
7. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

You can reset also the engine oil life display using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 290

If your vehicle comes with the Service Book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the Service Book, refer to the following maintenance schedule.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Replace engine oil	Turbo	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil filter	Turbo	When indicator comes on or 2 years									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance* ¹		Every 40,000km* ² Every 120,000 km* ³									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent* ^{4*5}		Every 10,000km or 1year									
Replace catalytic converter* ⁶		Every 30,000km									

*1 : Sensory Method

Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

*2 : Thai models

*3 : Except Thai models

*4 : Regular use of injector cleaner is required for models designated for Grand Cayman.

*5 : Regular use of injector cleaner may be required for models designated for the following countries, it will depend on the quality of the fuel used. Consult your dealer for details : Philippines, Vietnam, Indonesia, Sri Lanka, Brunei, Bangladesh, Jamaica

*6 : Pakistani models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000 months	20 12	40 24	60 36	80 48	100 60	120 72	140 84	160 96	180 108	200 120
Replace transmission fluid	CVT		•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter* ⁷	Normal	Every 150,000km									
	Severe	Every 70,000km* ⁹									
Replace fuel filter* ⁸	Normal	Every 180,000km									
	Severe	Every 110,000km* ⁹									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									

Visually inspect the following items:

Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots										
Suspension components										
Brake hoses and lines (Including ABS)										
Exhaust system	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections										
All fluid levels and condition of fluid										

*⁷ : Indonesian models

*⁸ : Except Indonesian models

*⁹ : It is recommended replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

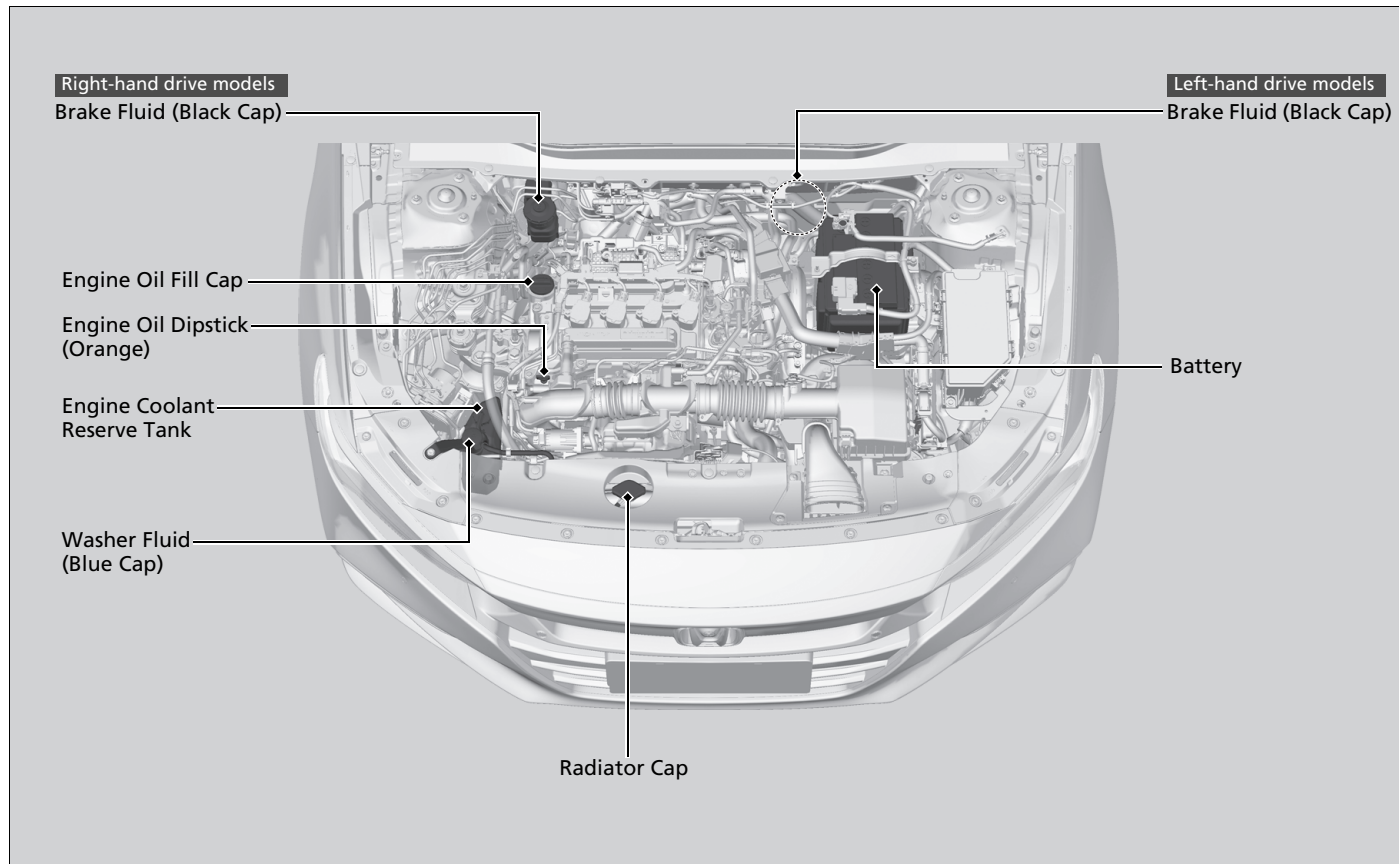
Maintenance Record

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

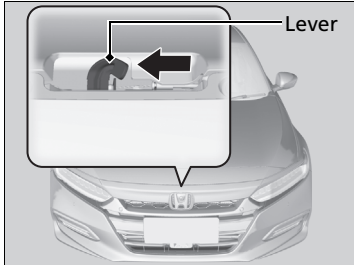
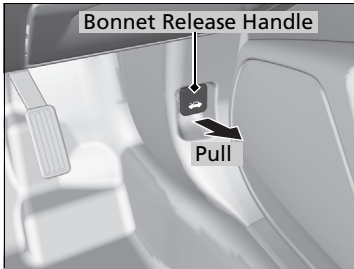
Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		

Maintenance

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.
4. Lift the bonnet up most of the way.
► The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

When closing, lower it to approximately 30 cm, then press down firmly with your hands.

Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised.
The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

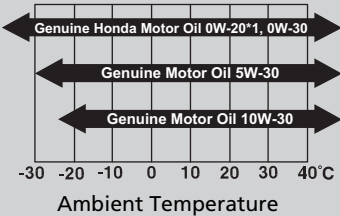
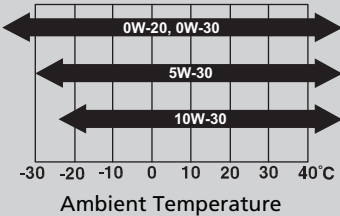
If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine’s performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Except Thai models

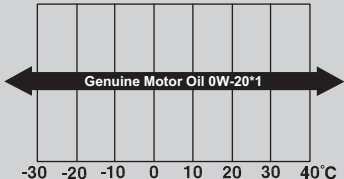
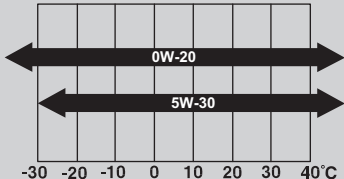
Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Genuine Honda Motor Oil	<ul style="list-style-type: none">API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oilACEA A5/B5
	

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Thai models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Honda Genuine Engine Oil Type 2.0 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACEA C2/C3
 <p>Ambient Temperature</p>	 <p>Ambient Temperature</p>

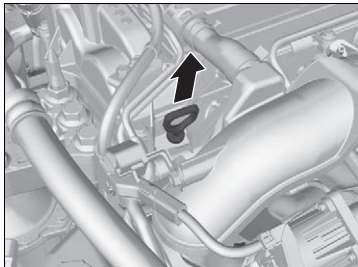
*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Oil Check

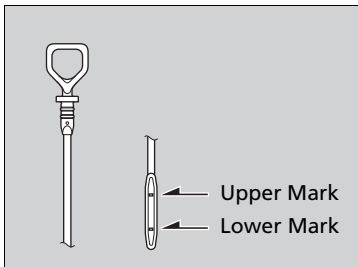
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

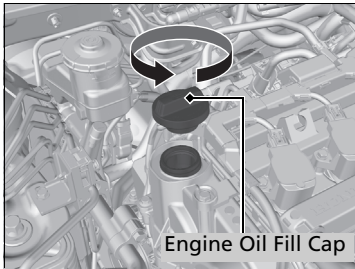
Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km.

Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

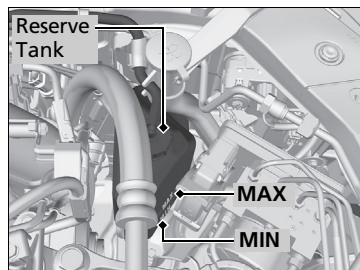
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

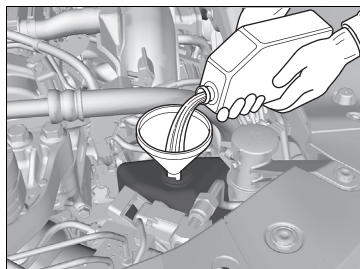
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
► If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

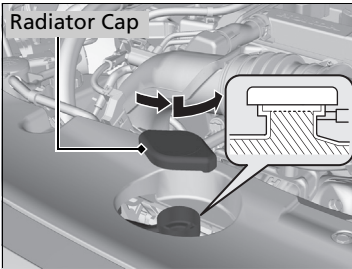
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

» Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission (CVT) fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 482

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

» Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

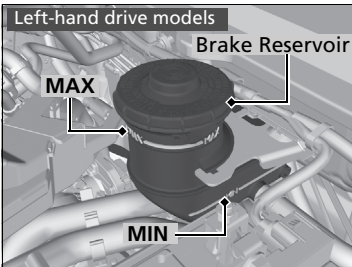
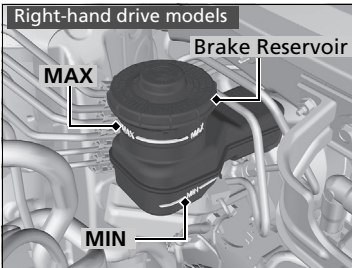
Do not mix HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission. Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

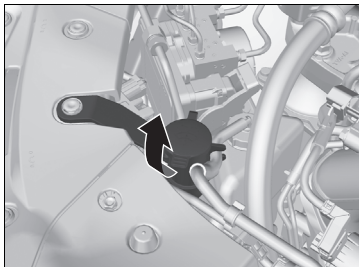
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

►► Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump. Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid. Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Fog Lights *

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted.

However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

* Not available on all models

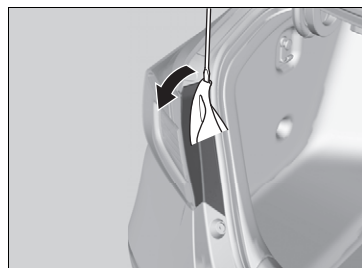
Taillights, Brake Lights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: LED

Taillight: LED

Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)

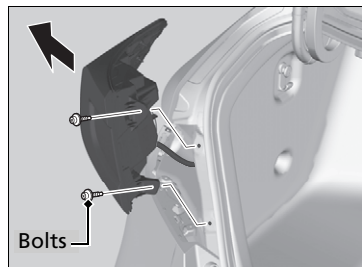


1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the covers.

► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

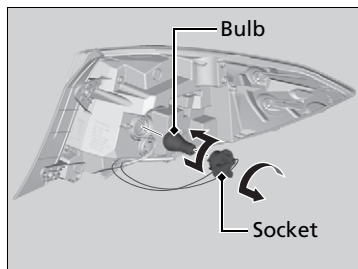
2. Remove the bolts.

3. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



✎ Taillights, Brake Lights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake lights and taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

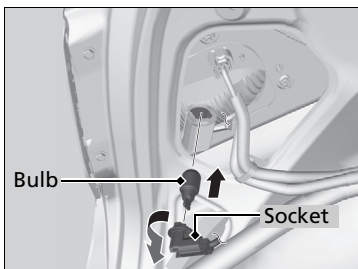
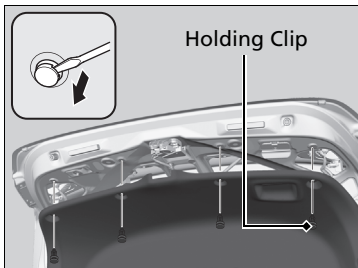


4. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
5. Push and turn the old bulb to the right and remove it, and insert a new bulb.

Taillights, Brake Lights and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED
Brake Light: LED
Back-Up Light: 16 W



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

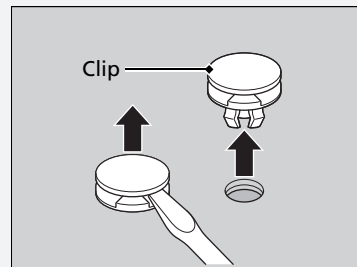
Left side

2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

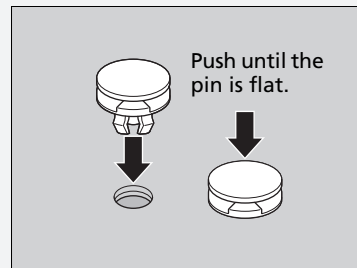
►► Taillights, Brake Lights and Back-Up Light Bulbs

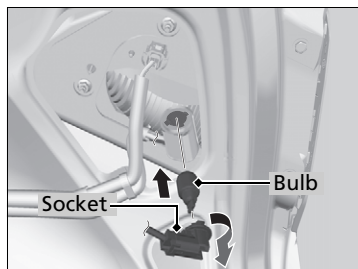
Taillights and brake lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

When removing the clip, insert a flat-tip screwdriver, then lift and remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the pin raised, and push until it is flat.





Right side

2. Turn the socket to the right and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Door Outer Handle Ambient Lights *

Door outer handle ambient lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Active Cornering Lights *

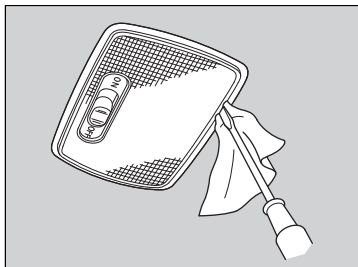
Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

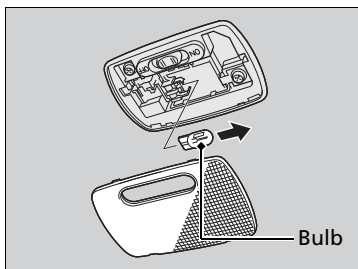
■ Ceiling Light Bulb*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

* Not available on all models

Models with ambient light

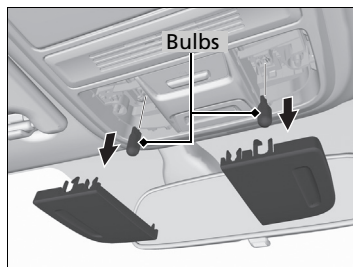
■ Front Map Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Map Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



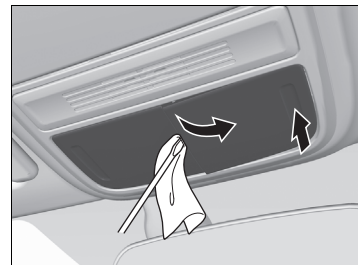
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Models without ambient light

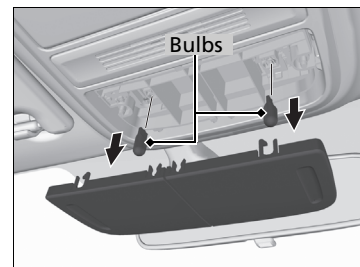
■ Front Map Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Map Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

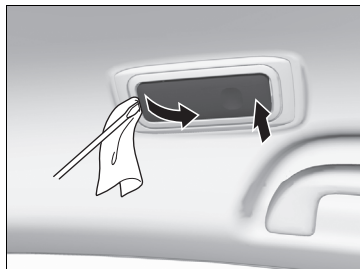


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

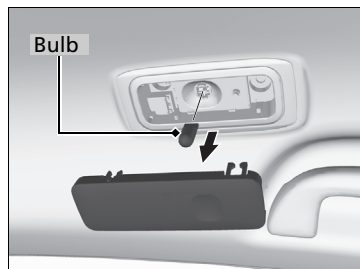
■ Rear Map Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear Map Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

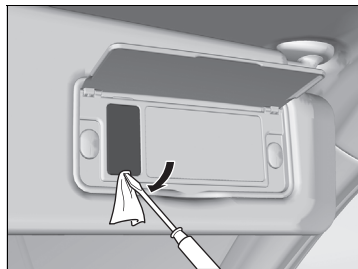


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

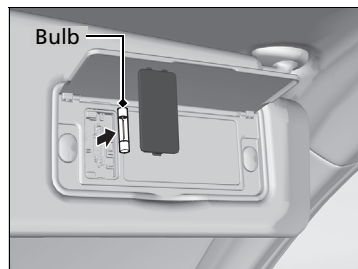
■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

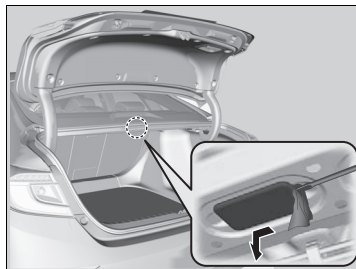


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

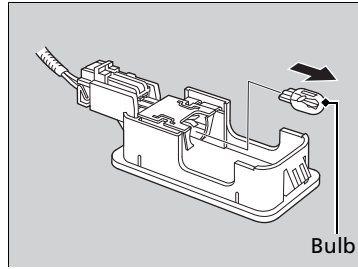
■ Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Boot Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

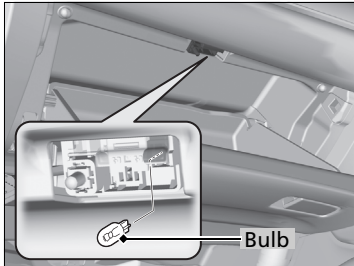


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

■ Glove Box Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Glove Box Light: 3.4 W

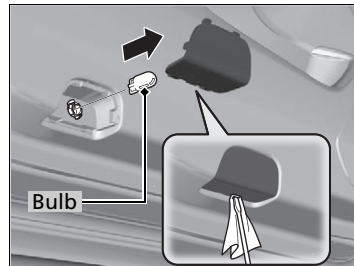


1. Open the glove box.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

■ Door Courtesy Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Door Courtesy Light: 3.8 W (2 CP)

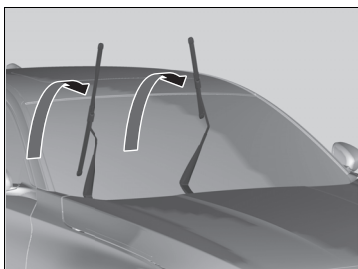
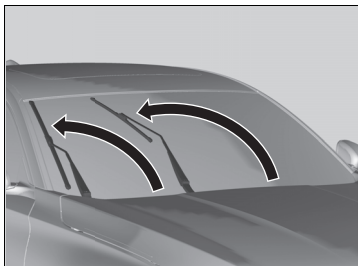


1. Open the door.
2. Pry on the front edge of the light using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



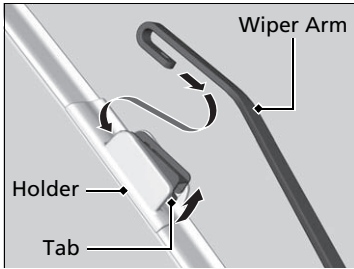
1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. While holding the wiper switch in the **MIST** position, set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
 - ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.

3. Lift both wiper arms.

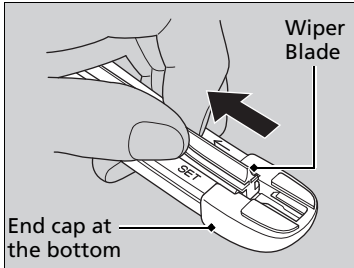
✎ Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

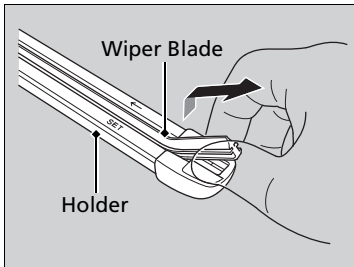
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



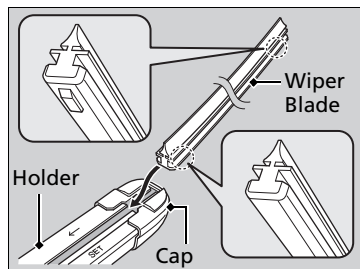
4. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.



5. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



6. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.



7. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
8. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
9. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
10. Lower both wiper arms.
11. Set the power mode to ON and hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 bar, 1-2 psi) per month.

⌘ Checking Tyres

⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

➔ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation**
P. 354

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

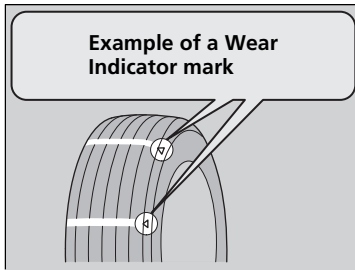
🔍 Wear Indicators P. 511

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

» Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

► Tyre and Wheel Replacement

WARNING

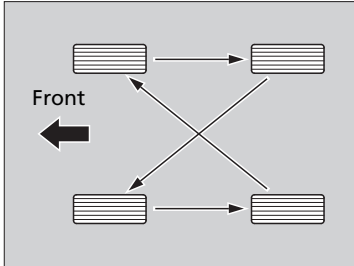
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

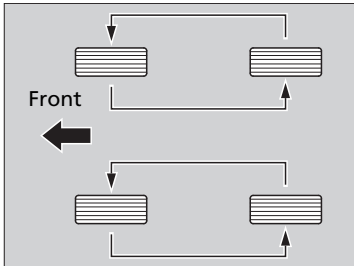
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

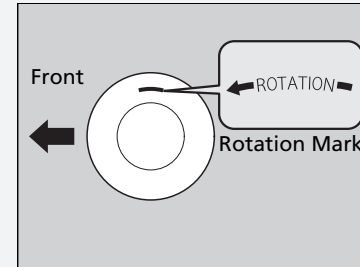
■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

☒ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

☒ Deflation Warning System Initialisation

P. 354

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.

► Snow Traction Devices

WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
225/50R17	RUD-matic classic 48492
235/45R18	RUD-matic classic 48494

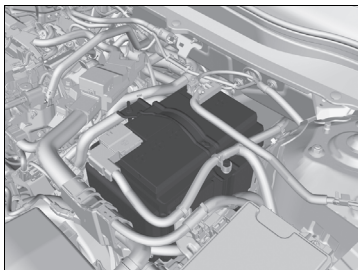
*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

❏ Snow Traction Devices

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.

➤ **Clock** P. 150

Models with radio data system

- The audio system is disabled.

➤ **Reactivating the audio system** P. 231

Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

⌘ Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution.

Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help to prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information.

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, safety support* and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting a battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.

Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Replacing the Button Battery

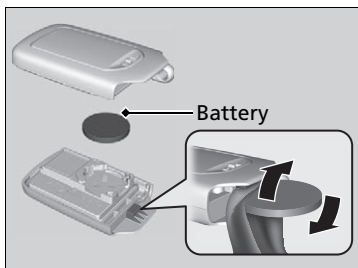
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

■ Keyless Remote



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
 - ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



▣ Replacing the Button Battery

⚠ WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

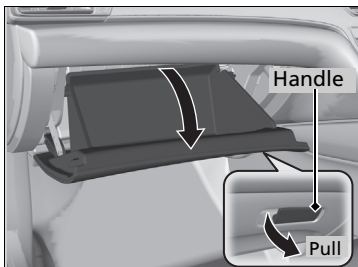
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

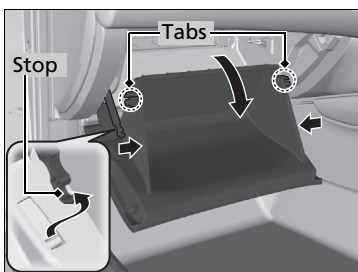
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 482

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



2. Push the stop on the passenger's door side of the glove box to detach it from glove box.

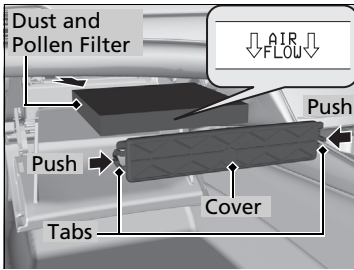
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

» Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the case.
7. Install a new filter in the case.
 - Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

▣ Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

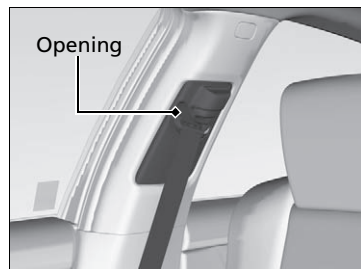
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light sensor.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

► Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

► **Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber** P. 506

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Water repellent glass*

The front side windows are fitted with water repellent agent glasses that disperse water into droplets. To clean the front side windows, wash off with water, or wipe with a soft damp cloth.

Using a glass cleaner may temporarily prevent the water repellent glasses from dispersing water. Rinsing the glasses with water can make them water repellent again. If you find that the glass has stopped dispersing water, consult a dealer.

» Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

» Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

» Cleaning the Window

Models with water repellent glass

To make the water-repellent effect last longer, do the following:

- Avoid opening and closing the front side windows when the windows are covered with dirt.
- Avoid using a glass cleaner with polishing compounds, wax, or detergent.
- Avoid scraping off frosts on the windows using a metallic tool.
- Dirt off the windows before using an automated car wash.

* Not available on all models

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants.

When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Hydrophilic Mirror*

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.
2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.
 - If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.
3. Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

▣ Hydrophilic Mirror*

To keep the hydrophilicity of the mirrors:

- Do not apply wax or water repellent agent on the mirror surface.
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a gritty cloth or abrasive cleanser.

* Not available on all models

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
 - 🔌 **Fuses** P. 557
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

» Accessories and Modifications

⚠ WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

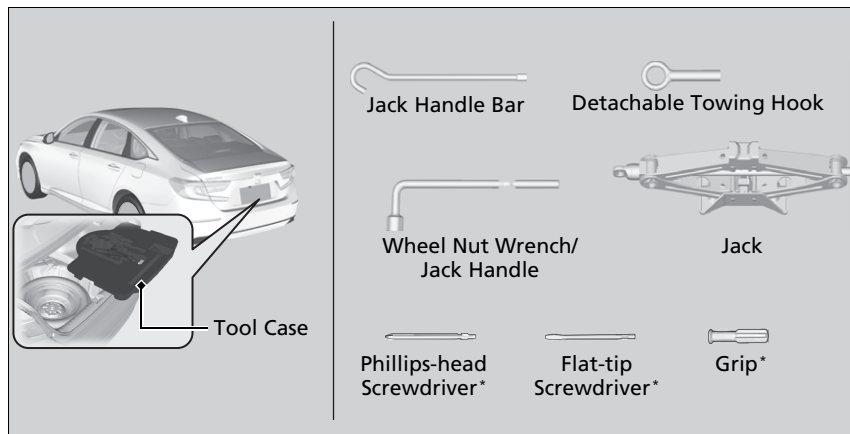
This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools	
Types of Tools.....	532
If a Tyre Goes Flat	
Changing a Flat Tyre.....	533
Engine Does Not Start	
Checking the Engine.....	541
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak	542
Emergency Engine Stop	543
Jump Starting	544
Shift Lever Does Not Move	547
Overheating	
How to Handle Overheating.....	549
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking	
If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears...	551

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On ...	552
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks	552
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks	553
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on ...	554
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On.....	555
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks	556

Fuses	
Fuse Locations	557
Inspecting and Changing Fuses.....	561
Emergency Towing	562
When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door	563
When You Cannot Open the Boot	564

Types of Tools



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the boot.

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.

Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

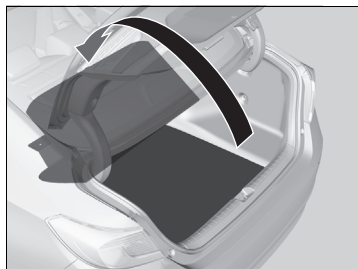
The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

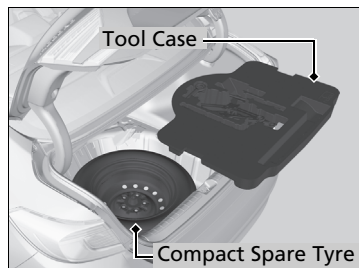
A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

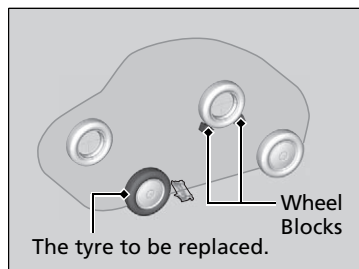
■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the boot floor lid.



2. Take the tool case out of the boot.
3. Take the jack, wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool case.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the compact spare tyre.



5. Place a wheel block or rock in the front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

► Changing a Flat Tyre

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

► Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

Be careful not to hurt yourself when removing or storing the compact spare tyre.

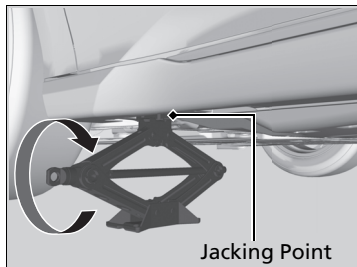
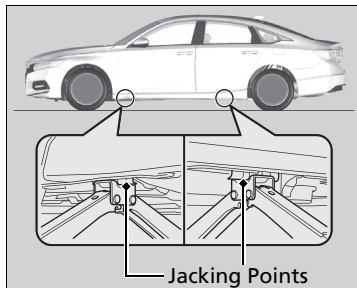


- 6.** Place the compact spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



- 7.** Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise (as shown in the image) until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

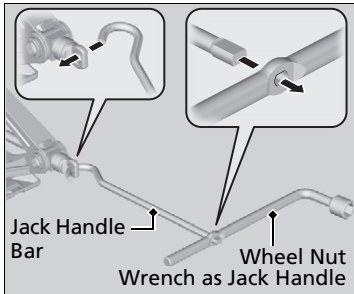
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Australian and New Zealand models

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

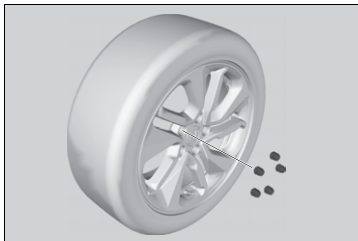
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

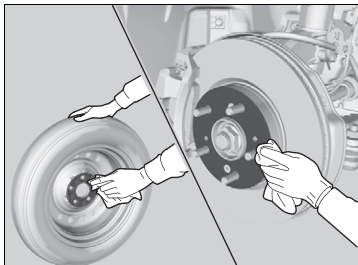
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



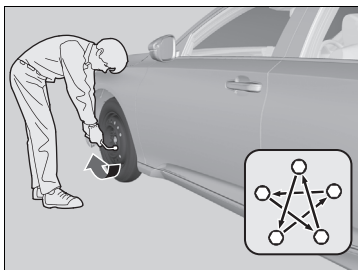
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the compact spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.

Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

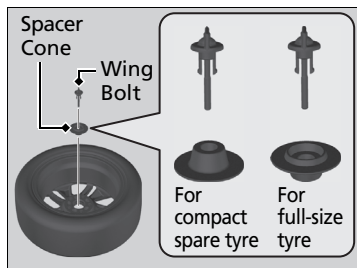
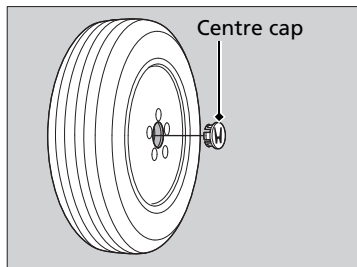
Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

►► Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the centre cap.

2. Place the flat tyre face down in the compact spare tyre well.

3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

4. Securely store the jack, wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool case.

5. Store the case in the boot.

►► Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Models with deflation warning system

■ Deflation Warning System and the Compact Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the compact spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, **Check System** will appear on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Initialise the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

▣ Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 354

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

⌘Checking the Engine

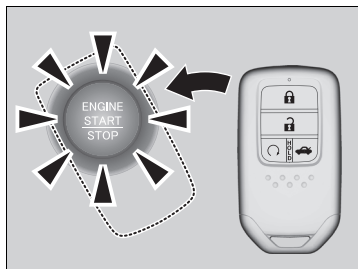
If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

➡ Jump Starting P. 544

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Check for a message on the driver information interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button message appears<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 542▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range P. 173 Check the brightness of the interior lights. <p>Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ➡ Battery P. 516• If the interior lights come on normally ➡ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 561
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Review the engine start procedure. <p>Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Starting the Engine P. 331 Check the immobilizer system indicator. <p>When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Immobilizer System P. 166 Check the fuel level. <p>There should be enough fuel in the tank.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Fuel Gauge P. 125 Check the fuses. <p>Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 561 If the problem continues: <ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Emergency Towing P. 562

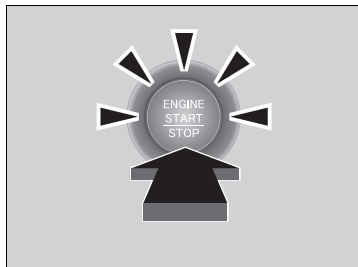
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.

► The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.

► If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into **[P]** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

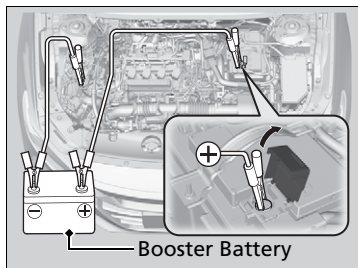
⚠ Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the cover on the positive \oplus terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery \oplus terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - ▶ Use a 12 volt booster battery only.
 - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.

Jump Starting

⚠ WARNING

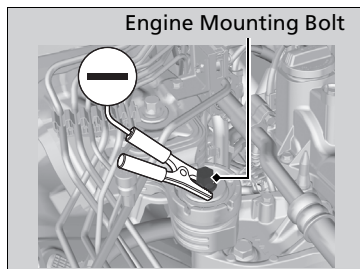
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

▣ What to Do After the Engine Starts

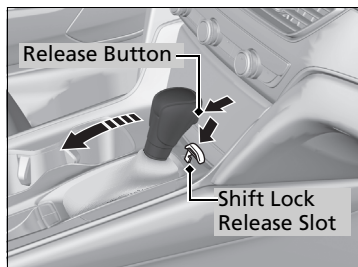
The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, safety support*, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting a battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Right-hand drive models

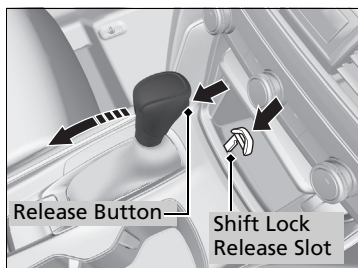
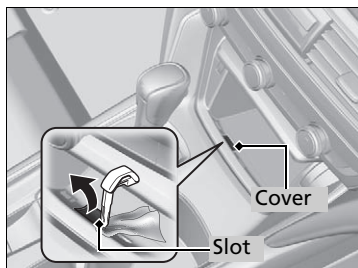
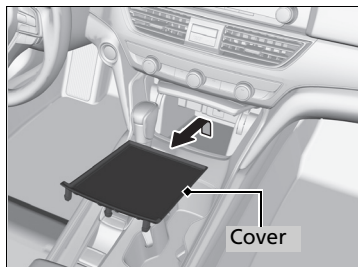
Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
 2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
 3. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
 4. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
- The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Left-hand drive models

■ Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
3. Open the centre pocket.
 ■ **Centre Pocket** P. 211
4. Remove the cover in the centre pocket.
5. Wrap a cloth around the tip of the built-in key. Put it into the shift lock release slot (as shown in the image) and remove the cover.
6. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
7. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
 ► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge pointer is at the **H** mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

WARNING

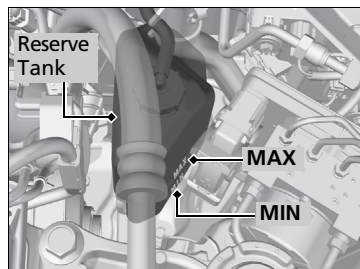
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer at the **H** mark may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge pointer comes down.
 - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge pointer has come down, resume driving. If it has not come down, contact a dealer for repairs.

►► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears



Oil Pressure Low

■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
 - ➡ **Oil Check** P. 490
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure warning.
 - ▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.
 - ▶ The warning does not disappear: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

⚠ If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes with the engine stopped until it cools.

►► If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

►► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability during sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

P. 554

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.

It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on



(Red)



(Amber)

■ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically

🔧 Parking Brake P. 406

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
 - Preventing the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into **P**.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

🔧 If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Models with deflation warning system

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been initialised. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on. If the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- Initialise the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 354

If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after initialising the deflation warning system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to first blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after initialising the deflation warning system.

- 🔧 Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 354

► If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

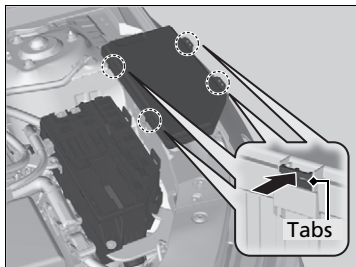
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.
















■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box






















Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.



















Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Battery	125 A
	–	–	(70 A)
		EPS	70 A
	–	–	(30 A)
2		Fuse Box Main 2	60 A
		EBB	40 A
		ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	–	–	(30 A)
		IG Main 1	30 A
		Rear Demister	40 A
		Fuse Box Main 1	60 A
	–	–	(30 A)
3		Heater Motor	40 A
	–	–	(40 A)
		ST Magnetic Switch	30 A
		Sub Fan Motor	30 A
		–	(30 A)
		–	(30 A)
4		Fuse Box Option 2*	(70 A)
	–	–	(40 A)
		Fuse Box Option 1	60 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
	–	–	(40 A)
		Main Fan Motor	30 A
5		R/M 2	30 A
		ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
		IG Main 2	30 A
		Wiper Motor	30 A
6		R/M 1	30 A
7	–	–	–
8	–	–	–
9		Stop Lights	10 A
10		TCU	(15 A)
11		Injector	20 A
12		–	(10 A)
13		IGP	15 A
14		–	(10 A)
15		FI ECU	10 A
16		Battery Sensor	7.5 A
17		DBW	15 A
18		Ignition Coil	15 A
19		Hazard	15 A
20	–	–	–
21	–	–	–
22		–	(10 A)
23		–	(20 A)
24		Audio	(15 A)
25		–	(20 A)

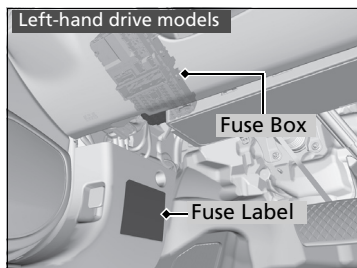
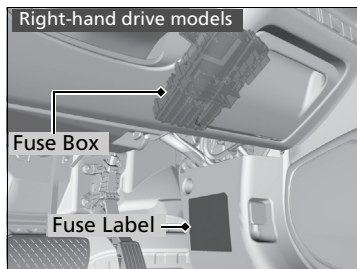
		Circuit Protected	Amps
26	–	–	–
27		Back Up	10 A
28		Horn	10 A
29		Fog Lights*	(10 A)
30		Shutter Grill	(7.5 A)
31		MG Clutch	10 A
32		Washer Motor	15 A
33	–	–	–
34		Active Cornering Lights*	(10 A)
35		Audio Sub	(7.5 A)
36		IGPS	7.5 A
37		IGPS (LAF)	7.5 A
38		VB ACT	7.5 A
39		IG1 TCU	(10 A)
40		IG1 Fuel Pump	20 A
41		IG1 ABS/VSA	7.5 A
42		IG1 ACG	10 A
43		IG1 Starter CUT	10 A
44		IG1 Monitor	7.5 A
45		–	(30 A)

Interior Fuse Box













Located under the dashboard.











Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.














Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	–	–
2	 Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
3	 Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
4	 ACC	10 A
5	 ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
6	 SRS	10 A
7	–	–
8	 –	10 A ^{*1} (10 A) ^{*2}
9	 SMART	10 A
10	–	– ^{*1} (10 A) ^{*2}
11	 Left Side Door lock	10 A
12	–	– ^{*1} (10 A) ^{*2}
13	 Right Side Door Lock	10 A
14	 IG2_Option	10 A
15	 DRL	10 A
16	–	– ^{*1} (20 A) ^{*2}
17	 Sunroof*	20 A ^{*1} (20 A) ^{*2}
18	–	–
19	–	–

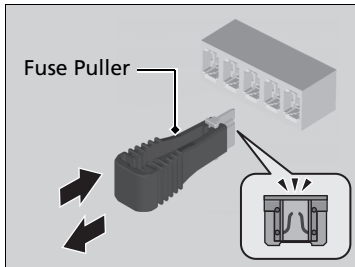
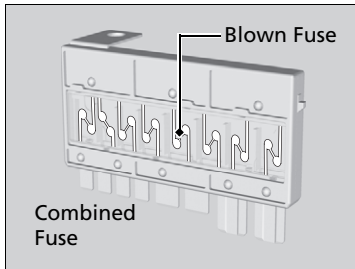
	Circuit Protected	Amps
20	 –	(10 A)
21	–	– ^{*1} (10 A) ^{*2}
22	–	–
23	–	–
24	 Premium Amp*	(20 A)
25	–	–
26	–	–
27	–	–
28	–	–
29	–	–
30	–	–
31	–	–
32	 –	15 A ^{*1} (15 A) ^{*2}
33	 Driver's Power Seat Sliding	20 A ^{*1} (20 A) ^{*2}
34	 Front Passenger's Power Seat Sliding	20 A ^{*1} (20 A) ^{*2}
35	 IG1_Option 2	10 A
36	 Meter	10 A
37	 IG1_Option 1	10 A
38	 Driver's Power Seat Reclining	20 A ^{*1} (20 A) ^{*2}
39	 Front Passenger's Power Seat Reclining	20 A ^{*1} (20 A) ^{*2}

	Circuit Protected	Amps
40	 Driver's Power Seat Lumbar Support	10 A ^{*1} (10 A) ^{*2}
41	–	–
42	 Seat Heater*	(20 A)
43	 Option	10 A
44	 –	(20 A)
45	 IG1 E CONC *	(7.5 A) ^{*1} – ^{*2}
46	 SRS	10 A
47	–	–
48	 HUD*	10 A ^{*1} (10 A) ^{*2}
49	 Door Lock	20 A
50	 Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
51	 Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
52	 Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
53	 Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
54	 Driver's Power Window	20 A
55	–	–

*1:Right-hand drive models

*2:Left-hand drive models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Open the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
 - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 557

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

» Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

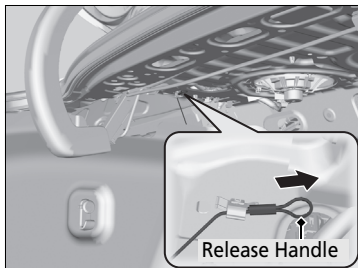
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 406

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

■ What to Do When Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the boot.
2. Pull the release handle toward you.
▶ The fuel fill door unlocks.
3. Open the fuel fill door.

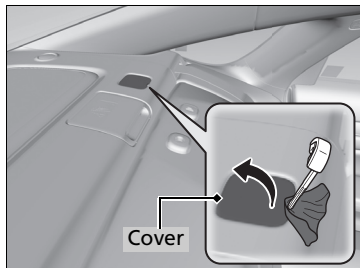
➤ **How to Refuel** P. 469

▣ When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

■ What to Do When Unable to Open the Boot

If you cannot open the boot, use the following procedure.



1. Remove the left side rear outer head restraint.

➤ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints P. 205

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of the built-in key. Put it into the cover (as shown in the image) and remove the cover.
4. Pull the boot release handle in the direction of the arrow in the image.
► The boot unlocks and opens.

» When You Cannot Open the Boot

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.



Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	566
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number	568
Devices that Emit Radio Waves*	569

Vehicle Specifications

Model	ACCORD	
	1,464 kg ^{*1}	
	1,464-1,495 kg ^{*2}	
	1,471-1,489 kg ^{*3}	
	1,475-1,479 kg ^{*4}	
Curb Weight	1,476 kg ^{*5}	
	1,481 kg ^{*6}	
	1,482-1,494 kg ^{*10}	
	1,488 kg ^{*7}	
	1,491 kg ^{*8}	
	1,504 kg ^{*9}	
Maximum permissible weight	2,000 kg	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight ^{*9, *10}	Front	1,070 kg
	Rear	960 kg

*1: Thai models

*2: Latin American, Bangladeshi and Sri Lankan models

*3: Pakistani models

*4: Indonesian models

*5: Philippine models

*6: Singaporean models

*7: Laotian and Vietnamese models

*8: Bruneian models

*9: Australian and New Zealand models

*10: Malaysian models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm	
Displacement	1,498 cm ³	
Compression Ratio	10.3 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILKAR8P8SY ^{*1} DILKAR8P8DY ^{*2}

*1: Except Thai models

*2: Thai models

Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded petrol, research octane number of 91 or higher ^{*1}
Type	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher ^{*2}
Fuel Tank Capacity	56 L

*1: Except Thai models

*2: Thai models

Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)/60AH(20)
----------	------------------

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	4.5 L
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Fog Lights*	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Door Outer Handle Ambient Lights*	LED
Interior Lights	
Front Map Lights	LED ^{*1} 8W ^{*2}
Rear Map Lights	LED ^{*1} 5W ^{*2}
Ceiling Light	LED ^{*1} 8W ^{*2}
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2W
Door Courtesy Lights	3.8W (2CP)
Foot Lights	LED
Boot Light	5W
Glove Box Light	3.4W
Ambient Lights*	LED
Console Compartment Light	LED
Centre Pocket Light	LED

*1: Models with sunroof

*2: Models without sunroof

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2
Capacity	Change 3.7 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Except Thai models
	·Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30 ·API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30 ·ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
	Thai models
	·Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0 0W-20 ·ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30
Capacity	Change 3.2 L
	Change including filter 3.5 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	6.03 L (change including the remaining 0.66 L in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	225/50R17 94V 235/45R18 94V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare	Size	T135/90D16 102M
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7 1/2J 18 x 8J
	Compact Spare	16 x 4T

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	425-475g* ¹ 395-445g* ²

*1: Right-hand drive models

*2: Left-hand drive models

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,894 mm* ^{1, *2}
	4,901 mm* ^{3, *4, *5, *6}
	4,904 mm* ⁷
Width	1,862 mm
Height	1,450 mm
Wheelbase	2,830 mm
Track	Front 1,591 mm* ^{1, *3, *4, *7}
	1,600 mm* ^{2, *5, *6}
	Rear 1,603 mm* ^{1, *3, *4, *7} 1,610 mm* ^{2, *5, *6}

*1: Indonesian models

*2: Thai models

*3: Bruneian, Laotian, Philippine, and Vietnamese models

*4: Latin American, Bangladeshi, Pakistani, Sri Lankan, and Malaysian models with 18 inch wheels

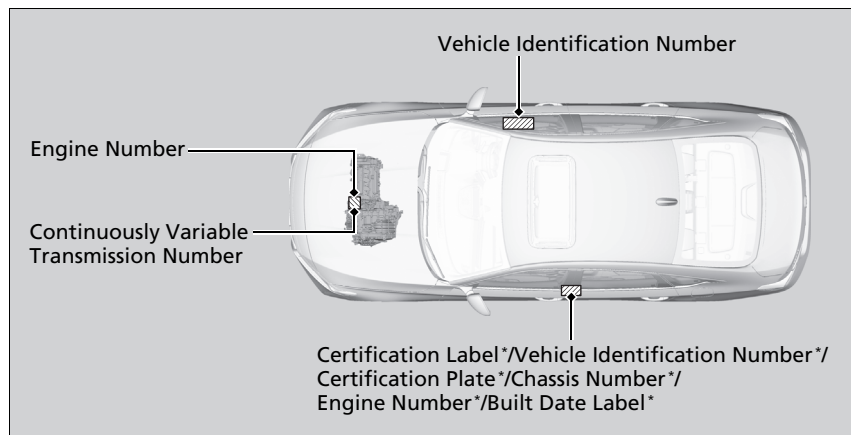
*5: Latin American, Bangladeshi, Pakistani, Sri Lankan, and Malaysian models with 17 inch wheels

*6: Singaporean models

*7: Australian and New Zealand models

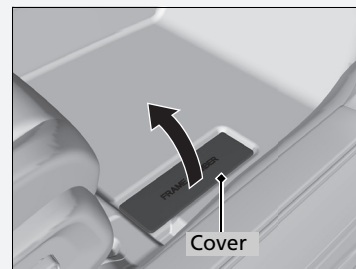
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.




Australian models

The built date is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Keyless Access System	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	Hands-Free Telephone System
Singaporean models	<div>Complies with IMDA Standards DA107248</div> <div>DA107248</div>	<div>Complies with IMDA Standards DB03227</div> <div>DB03227</div>	<div>Complies with IMDA Standards DA107248</div> <div>DA107248</div>
Vietnamese models	<div><div>HONDA A00092011</div><div> ICT</div></div> <div>—</div>	<div>—</div>	<div>—</div>

* Not available on all models

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode	343
Operation	344

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	412
Accessories and Modifications	528
Accessory Power Socket	215
Active Cornering Lights	181
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	100, 101, 370
Adding	
Coolant	492
Engine Oil	491
Washer	496
Additives, Engine Oil	488
Adjusting	
Armrest	206
Front Seats	197
Head Restraints	203
Mirrors	194
Rear Seats	201
Steering Wheel	193
Agile Handling Assist	353
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)	223
Changing the Mode	223, 224
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	224
Dust and Pollen Filter	520

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	223, 224
Sensors	226
Synchronization Mode	225
Using Automatic Climate Control	223
Air Pressure	567
Airbags	45
After a Collision	47
Airbag Care	54
Event Data Recorder	1
Front Airbags (SRS)	47
Indicator	53, 93
Sensors	45
Side Airbags	50
Side Curtain Airbags	52
AM/FM Radio	252
Android Auto	275
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	412
Indicator	93
Apple CarPlay	272
Armrest	206
Audio Remote Controls	232
Audio System	228
Adjusting the Sound	249
Audio/Information Screen	237
Display Setup	250
Error Messages	279
FLAC/WAV/MP4/AVI	261
General Information	281
Home Screen	242
How to use Siri Eyes Free	271
iPod	258

MP3/WMA/AAC	261
Reactivating	231
Remote Controls	232
Security Code	231
Selecting an Audio Source	251
Status Area	247
Theft Protection	231
USB Flash Drives	261, 281
USB Ports	229
Wallpaper Setup	240
Audio/Information Screen	237
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	163
Customize	305
Auto High-Beam	183
Indicator	93
Automatic Brake Hold	410
Indicator	90, 410
Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	90, 410
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	187
Automatic Lighting	178
Average Fuel Economy	131
Average Speed	133

B

Battery	516
Charging System Indicator	90, 552
Jump Starting	544
Maintenance (Checking the Battery)	516
Maintenance (Replacing)	519
Belts (Seat)	34
Beverage Holders	214
Bluetooth® Audio	264
Booster Seats (For Children)	81
Boot	164
Lid	164
Light Bulb	504, 566
Open Message	33, 106
Unable to Open	564
Brake System	406
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	412
Automatic Brake Hold	410
Brake Assist System	413
Fluid	495
Foot Brake	409
Indicator	87, 88
Parking Brake	406
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) ...	188
Bulb Replacement	497
Active Cornering Lights	502
Boot Light	504
Ceiling Light	503
Door Courtesy Lights	505
Door Outer Handle Ambient Lights	502
Fog Lights	497
Front Map Light	503
Front Turn Signal Lights	497
Glove Box Light	505
Headlights	497
High-Mount Brake Light	502
Map Lights	503
Position/Daytime Running Lights	497
Rear Licence Plate Light	502
Rear Map Light	504
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	497
Taillights, Brake Lights and Back-Up Light	500
Taillights, Brake Lights and Rear Turn Signal Light	498
Vanity Mirror Lights	504
Bulb Specifications	566

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas	83
Carrying Luggage	327, 329
Centre Pocket	211
Certification Label	568
Changing Bulbs	497
Charging System Indicator	90, 552
Child Restraint System	58
Booster Seats	81
Child Restraint System for Infants	62
Child Restraint System for Small Children ...	64
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt	74
Larger Children	80
Rear-facing Child Restraint System	62
Selecting a Child Restraint System	65
Using a Tether	77
Child Safety	58
Childproof Door Locks	162
Childproof Door Locks	162
Cleaning the Exterior	524
Cleaning the Interior	522
Climate Control System	223
Changing the Mode	223, 224
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	224
Dust and Pollen Filter	520
Recirculation and Fresh Air Mode	224
Sensors	226
Synchronization Mode	225
Using Automatic Climate Control	223
Clock	150
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) ...	361
Coat Hook	219
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	361
Compact Spare Tyre	533, 567
Console Compartment	213

Continuously Variable Transmission

Creeping	338
Fluid	494
Kickdown	338
Operating the Shift Lever	20, 340, 342
Shift Lever Does Not Move	547
Shifting	339, 341

Controls..... 149**Coolant (Engine)**..... 492

Adding to the Radiator	493
Adding to the Reserve Tank	492
Overheating	549

Creeping (Continuously Variable Transmission)..... 338**Cross Traffic Monitor**..... 423**Cruise Control**..... 347

Indicator	99
-----------------	----

Cup Holders..... 214**Customized Features**..... 290**D****DAB**..... 255**Daytime Running Lights**..... 182**Dead Battery**..... 544**Defaulting All the Settings**..... 308**Deflation Warning System**..... 354

Indicator	96
-----------------	----

Initialisation	354
----------------------	-----

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows..... 224**Devices that Emit Radio Waves**..... 569**Dimming**

Headlights	177
Rearview Mirror	194

Dipstick (Engine Oil)..... 490**Directional Signals (Turn Signals)**..... 176**Door Mirrors**..... 195**Doors**..... 151

Auto Door Locking	163
Auto Door Unlocking	163
Keys	151

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside..... 160**Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside**..... 154**Lockout Prevention System**..... 159**Driver Attention Monitor**..... 139**Driver Information Interface**..... 126

Switching the Display	126
Warning and Information Messages	105

Driver's Side Pocket..... 212**Driving**..... 325

Braking	406
Continuously Variable Transmission	338
Cruise Control	347
Shifting Position	339, 341
Starting the Engine	331

Driving Position Memory System..... 191**Driving Support Information**..... 142**Dust and Pollen Filter**..... 520**E****Eco Assist System**..... 11

ECON Mode	346
Indicator	99

Elapsed Time..... 133**Electric Power Steering (EPS) System**

Indicator	95, 555
-----------------	---------

Emergency..... 562**Emergency Engine Stop**..... 543**Emergency Stop Signal**..... 414**Engine**..... 568

Coolant	492
Jump Starting	544
Oil	488
Starting	331

Engine Coolant..... 492

Adding to the Radiator	493
Adding to the Reserve Tank	492
Overheating	549
Temperature Gauge	125

Engine Oil..... 488

Adding	491
Checking	490
Low Oil Pressure Warning	106, 551
Recommended Engine Oil	488

Engine Start/Stop Button..... 173**EPS (Electric Power Steering)**

System	95, 555
--------------	---------

Exhaust Gas Hazard

(Carbon Monoxide)	83
-------------------------	----

Exterior Care (Cleaning)..... 524

Exterior Mirrors..... 195

F

Features..... 227

Filter

Dust and Pollen..... 520

Flat Tyre..... 533

Fluids

Brake..... 495

Continuously Variable Transmission 494

Engine Coolant..... 492

Windscreen Washer..... 496

FM/AM Radio 252

Fog Lights..... 180

Indicator 97

Folding Down the Rear Seats..... 201

Foot Brake..... 409

Front Airbags (SRS)..... 47

Front Seat Heaters..... 221

Front Seats..... 197

Adjusting..... 197

Front Sensor Camera..... 403

Fuel..... 22, 467

Economy..... 471

Gauge..... 125

Instant Fuel Economy..... 131

Low Fuel Indicator..... 92

Range..... 131

Recommendation..... 467

Refueling..... 467

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions 471

Fuel Fill Cap..... 22, 469

Fuel Fill Door..... 22, 469

Fuses..... 557

Inspecting and Changing..... 561

Locations..... 557, 559

G

Gasoline (Fuel)

Instant Fuel Economy..... 131

Low Fuel Indicator 92

Gauges..... 125

Gear Shift Lever Positions

Continuously Variable

Transmission..... 339, 341

Glass (care)..... 522, 525

Glove Box..... 211

H

Handling the Unexpected..... 531

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System..... 309

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and

Call History..... 318

Automatic Transferring..... 317

Favorite Contacts..... 319

HFT Buttons..... 309

HFT Menus..... 312

HFT Status Display..... 311

Making a Call..... 321

Options During a Call..... 324

Phone Setup..... 314

Receiving a Call..... 324

Ring Tone..... 317

Hazard Warning Button..... 4, 5

Head Restraints..... 203

Headlights..... 177

Aiming..... 497

Auto High-Beam..... 183

Automatic Operation..... 178

Dimming..... 177, 182

Operating..... 177

Head-Up Display..... 144

Heaters (Seat)..... 221

HFT (Hands-Free Telephone)..... 309

High Beam Indicator..... 97

Hill Start Assist System..... 336

Honda Sensing..... 23, 358

I

Identification Numbers..... 568

Engine and Transmission..... 568

Vehicle Identification..... 568

Immobilizer System..... 166

Indicator..... 98

Indicators..... 86

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed

Follow (Amber)..... 100

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed

Follow (Green)..... 101, 371

- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 93
- Auto High-Beam 93
- Automatic Brake Hold 90, 410
- Automatic Brake Hold System 90, 410
- Charging System 90, 552
- CRUISE CONTROL 99, 348
- CRUISE MAIN 99, 347
- ECON Mode 99, 346
- Electric Power Steering (EPS)
 - System 95, 555
- Fog Light 97
- High Beam 97
- Immobilizer System 98
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)
 - (Amber) 101
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)
 - (Green) 101, 391
- Lights On 97
- Low Fuel 92
- Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning
 - System 96, 354
- M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/
 - Shift Indicator 91
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp 90, 552
- Parking Brake and Brake System
 - (Amber) 88, 554
- Parking Brake and Brake System
 - (Red) 87, 553, 554
- Safety Support (Amber) 102
- Safety Support (Green/Gray) 104
- Seat Belt Reminder 36, 92
- Security System Alarm 98
- Shift Lever Position 91
- SPORT Mode 99, 345
- Supplemental Restraint System 53, 93
- System Message 98
- Transmission System 91
- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 97
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 95
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 94
- Information** 565
- Instant Fuel Economy** 131
- Instrument Panel** 85
 - Brightness Control 188
- Integrated Sunshades** 220
- Interior Lights** 207
- Interior Rearview Mirror** 194
- iPhone** 281
- iPod** 258, 281
- J**
- Jack** 532, 536
- Jack handle (Wheel Nut Wrench)** 532, 537
- Jump Starting** 544
- K**
- Key Number Tag** 152
- Keyless Access System** 154
- Keyless Lockout Prevention** 159
- Keys** 151
 - Lockout Prevention 159
 - Number Tag 152
 - Rear Door Won't Open 162
 - Remote Transmitter 158
 - Types and Functions 151
- Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission)** 338
- L**
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** 386
- LaneWatch** 356
- Light Switches** 177
- Lights** 177, 497
 - Active Cornering Lights 181
 - Auto High-Beam 183
 - Automatic 178
 - Bulb Replacement 497
 - Daytime Running Lights 182
 - Fog Lights 180
 - High Beam Indicator 97
 - Interior 207
 - Lights On Indicator 97
 - Turn Signals 176
- Load Limit** 329
- Locking/Unlocking** 151
 - Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 163
 - Childproof Door Locks 162
 - From Inside 160
 - From Outside 154

Keys.....	151
Using a Key.....	159
Lockout Prevention System.....	159
Low Battery Charge.....	552
Low Fuel Indicator.....	92
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength.....	153
Low Oil Pressure Warning.....	551
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator.....	96, 556
Lower Anchorages.....	70
Lubricant Specifications Chart.....	567
Luggage (Load Limit).....	329
Luggage Hooks.....	219
Lumbar Support.....	199
Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch.....	199

M

Maintenance.....	135, 473
Battery.....	516
Brake Fluid.....	495
Cleaning.....	522
Climate Control.....	520
Coolant.....	492
Oil.....	490
Precautions.....	474
Radiator.....	493
Remote Transmitter.....	519
Replacing Light Bulbs.....	497
Safety.....	475
Transmission Fluid.....	494

Tyres.....	509
Under the Bonnet.....	486
Malfunction Indicator Lamp.....	90, 552
Map Lights.....	208
Maximum Permissible Weight.....	329, 566
Meters, Gauges.....	125
Mirrors.....	194
Adjusting.....	194
Door.....	195
Exterior.....	195
Interior Rearview.....	194
Modifications (and Accessories).....	528
MP3.....	261
MP4.....	261
Multi-View Camera System.....	429
Multi-View Rear Camera.....	427

N

Navigation.....	134
Numbers (Identification).....	568

O

Odometer.....	129
Oil (Engine).....	488
Adding.....	491
Checking.....	490
Low Oil Pressure Warning.....	551
Oil Monitor System.....	477
Recommended Engine Oil.....	488

Viscosity.....	488
Open Source Licences.....	284
Opening	
Boot.....	564
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet.....	487
Boot.....	164
Power Windows.....	168
Sunroof.....	171
Outside Temperature Display.....	129
Overheating.....	549

P

Paddle Shifters	
(7-Speed Manual Shift Mode).....	343
Parking Brake.....	406
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber).....	88, 554
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red).....	87, 553, 554
Parking Sensor System.....	417
Petrol.....	22, 467
Economy and CO ₂ Emissions.....	471
Gauge.....	125
Information.....	467
Instant Fuel Economy.....	131
Refueling.....	467
Phone.....	136
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio.....	264

Pop-up Hood System	55
Pop-up Hood System Care	57
Power Windows	168
Precautions While Driving	337
Rain	337
Pregnant Women	42
Puncture (Tyre)	533

R

Radiator	493
Radio (AM/FM)	252
Radio Data System (RDS)	254
Range	131
RDS (Radio Data System)	254
Rear Demister Button	190
Rear Seats (Folding Down)	201
Rearview Mirror	194
Refueling	467
Fuel Gauge	125
Low Fuel Indicator	92
Petrol	467, 566
Regulations	569
Remote Engine Start	333
Remote Transmitter	158
Replacement	
Battery	519
Bulbs	497
Fuses	557, 559
Tyres	512
Wiper Blade Rubber	506

Resetting a Trip Meter	129, 131
Road Departure Mitigation	397
On and Off	400

S

Safe Driving	29
Safety Check	33
Safety Labels	84
Safety Message	0
Safety Support	143
Seat Belts	34
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor	41
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners	38
Checking	43
Fastening	39
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt	74
Pregnant Women	42
Reminder	36
Warning Indicator	36, 92
Seat Heaters	221
Seats	197
Adjusting	197
Front Seats	197
Rear Seats	201
Seat Heaters	221
Security System	166
Immobilizer System Indicator	98
Security System Alarm Indicator	98

Select Lever	20, 339, 341
Operation	20, 340, 342
Selecting a Child Restraint System	65
Selector Knob (Audio)	235
Setting the Clock	150
Shift Lever	20, 339, 341
Releasing	548
Won't Move	547
Shift Lever Position Indicator	91
Shifting (Continuously Variable Transmission)	339, 341
Shoulder Anchor	41
Side Airbags	50
Side Curtain Airbags	52
Siri Eyes Free	271
Snow Traction Devices	514
Spare Tyre	533, 567
Spark Plugs	566
Specifications	566
Specified Fuel	467, 566
Speedometer	125
SPORT Mode	345
Indicator	99
SPORT Mode Indicator	345
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	47
Starting the Engine	331
Does Not Start	541
Jump Starting	544
Remote Engine Start	333
Steering Wheel	193
Adjusting	193

Stopping	415
Sunglasses Holder	220
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	47
Switches	
(Around the Steering Wheel)	4, 6, 173
Synchronization Mode	225
System Message Indicator	98

T

Tachometer	136
Temperature	
Gauge	125
Outside Temperature Display	129
Temperature Sensor	129, 226
Time (Setting)	150
Tools	532
Towing a Trailer	330
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency	562
Transmission	339, 341
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode	343
Continuously Variable	339, 341
Fluid	494
Number	568
Shift Lever Position Indicator	91
Transmission System	
Indicator	91
TRIP Button	128
Trip Computer	130, 132
Trip Meter	129, 131, 133

Troubleshooting	531
Blown Fuse	557, 559
Brake Pedal Vibrates	26
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	27
Emergency Towing	562
Engine Won't Start	541
Noise When Braking	28
Overheating	549
Puncture/Flat Tyre	533
Rear Door Won't Open	26
Shift Lever Won't Move	547
Warning Indicators	86
Turbo Engine Vehicle	472
Turn Signals	176
Indicators (Instrument Panel)	97
Turn-by-Turn Directions	147
Tyres	509
Air Pressure	509, 567
Checking and Maintaining	509
Inspection	510
Puncture (Flat Tyre)	533
Rotation	513
Spare Tyre	533, 567
Tyre Chains	514
Wear Indicators	511
Winter	514

U

Unlocking the Doors	154
Unlocking the Front Doors	
from the Inside	16, 160
USB Flash Drives	261, 281
USB Ports	229
Using the Honda Smart Parking Assist	
System	439
Using the Keyless Access System	154
Using the Multi-View Camera	435

V

Vanity Mirrors	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers	568
Vehicle Speed	125, 147
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	351
Off Button	352
OFF Indicator	95
System Indicator	94
Ventilation	223, 224
Viscosity (Oil)	488, 567
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	351

W

Wallpaper	240
Warning and Information Messages	105
Warning Indicator On/Blinking	551
Warning Labels	84
Warnings	135

Watts	566
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	511
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)	532, 537
Wi-Fi Connection	269
Window Washers	186
Adding/Refilling Fluid.....	496
Switch	186
Windows (Opening and Closing)	168
Windscreen	
Cleaning.....	522, 525
Defrosting	224
Washer Fluid.....	496
Wiper Blades	506
Wipers and Washers	186
Winter Tyres	514
Tyre Chains.....	514
Wipers and Washers	186
Automatic Intermittent Wipers.....	187
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades	506
Wireless Charger	216
WMA	261
Worn Tyres	509

